

经全国中小学教材审定委员会2004年初审通过
普通高中课程标准实验教科书

英语 ▶ 4 [必修模块]

Senior High English

北京师范大学出版社 合编
培生教育出版集团

主 编：王 蔷 Michael Harris
副主编：曹瑞珍
编 者：马 欣 王 源 Anna Sikorzyńska

北京师范大学出版社
· 北京 ·

To students

Welcome to this new series of senior high school English textbooks! When you first turn the pages, how do you feel about the book? Do you like it? I sincerely hope you do!

With your new book in hand, you should start by getting familiar with it, for example, finding out about the units and lessons, the topics, the overall organisation, the learning requirements, types of activities, and of course ways of assessment. At the beginning of each book, you will find a section on “Learning to Learn”. This is designed to help you develop useful ways in learning and build up your confidence. Inside each unit, you will find a lot of opportunities for you to participate in activities, practise the language, explore ideas, solve language problems, exchange information, express your opinions and cooperate with others in listening, speaking, reading and writing. Through the whole process you are supported step by step with learning strategies and with guidance on how to manage your own learning. We believe, by working hard on all the tasks, by participating actively in class without being afraid of making mistakes, and by taking every opportunity to practise using the language outside class, you will be surprised to find how much progress you can make in your English study!

Entering senior high school, you will need to develop more independence and learn to manage your own learning instead of waiting to be told what to do by your teachers. The following are some useful tips for you to develop such capabilities.

REVIEW AFTER EACH LESSON

After each English lesson, review the text and new words you have learned and go over your notes to make sure you understand what you’ve learned. If you don’t understand or have any difficulties, ask your classmates or teacher for help or advice.

READ MORE ENGLISH

Read other English books, newspapers or magazines which interest you and of course as you can find them. Use the reading strategies you have learned in class for your after class reading. This will help you improve your reading speed, expand your vocabulary and increase comprehension. And it’s an enjoyable way to learn English, too.

LISTEN TO ENGLISH

Get into the habit of listening to cassettes of the textbooks and tuning in to English language radio and TV stations. You’ll benefit from listening to the way English words are used and how they are pronounced correctly.

LOOK AT ENGLISH LEARNING MATERIAL ON THE WEB

<http://www.i21st.cn> offers online English learning materials and learning resources as well as tests and exercises plus many useful links to other resources for English learners.

TALK IN ENGLISH

Talk to your classmates and friends who are also learning English. Make a rule that perhaps for an hour a week, or when you go out together, you’ll only speak English to each other! Be brave to talk to a native speaker when you have a chance.

REFLECT ON YOUR LEARNING

Every once in a while, you should find time to look back at what progress you have made and also what difficulties or problems you have encountered. Think about ways how you can improve yourself, then talk to a friend or your teacher about it and try to make a new plan for the next stage of learning.

We hope these tips are helpful and we wish all of you success in your English study!

Chief Editor

Wang Qiang

亲爱的同学们：你们好！

五彩斑斓的高中生活刚刚开始，我谨向你们表示最衷心的祝贺！翻开这套高中英语教材，不知你们的第一感觉如何？喜欢吗？衷心希望你们能喜欢！

学好英语其实并不难，最佳途径就是多用英语进行学习和交流。当你们能够用英语敲开通往世界文化之窗，探索异域文化之精彩的时候，一定会感到未曾有过的喜悦，也会更加体会到祖国文化的博大精深。这一天离你们并不遥远。编写本套教材的初衷就是为你们提供体验语言学习的乐趣，帮助你们获得语言学习的方法，促进你们语言交流能力的发展，丰富你们的人文和科技知识，使你们在高中毕业的时候能够具备初步的跨文化交流的意识和能力，为学习更多的科学文化知识、开展国际交流打好基础。

拿到一本新的教材，你们首先要做的就是了解教材的全貌：有什么话题？有什么栏目？有什么能力要求？有什么学习活动？如何进行评价？在每册书的开篇部分，我们都设计了有关英语学习方法的内容。在每个单元中，我们为你们提供了大量的参与、实践、探究、交流与合作的机会，渗透了对英语技能策略的训练，以帮助你们找到学习英语的有效方法。我们相信“有效的方法+不断的努力”是学好英语的捷径。只要坚持不懈地大胆实践和主动交流，你们的英语学习一定能够取得意想不到的进步。

高中阶段是人生中重要的成长期。在这一阶段的学习中，你们将学到丰富的社会及科学文化知识，发展多方面的能力，并且开始逐步形成自己的人生观和价值观。重要的是，你们每个人都有机会发展别具一格的个人学习风格。你们会发现你们将有更多的自主性和选择权，你们将学会为自己确定学习目标，选择学习内容，发展学习方法，参与自我评价，学会与人合作，这是你们成为自主学习者的开端。我相信，用好这本教材，会让你们每一个人在英语学习中都非同一般，每一个人都会充满自信，每一个人都能取得成功！

祝愿你们高中学习与生活的每一天都过得充实、快乐、自信！

欢迎同学与我们交流沟通，让更多的人分享你成功的喜悦。我们的联系方式是：北京师范大学出版社基础教育分社（100875），电话（010）58804236。

主 编 王 蔷

2004年8月

CONTENTS

Learning to Learn (pp.4-6) A. Staying Motivated B. Word Power

LANGUAGE INPUT

UNITS/LESSONS	FUNCTION	GRAMMAR	VOCABULARY
10 MONEY (pp.7-17) Warm-up Lesson 1 A Material World Lesson 2 The Right Price Lesson 3 Your Money Lesson 4 Advertisements Communication Workshop	Shopping and bargaining <i>I'll give you ...</i> <i>They're not really worth ...</i> <i>Come on, you're not ...</i> <i>One last offer, ...</i> <i>That's fair.</i> <i>Sixteen pounds, cash.</i> <i>And that's it.</i>	Indefinite pronouns some/any/no a lot of/many/much all/none/both/neither another/other/ the other/the second Infinitive (Review)	Verbs to do with money Adjectives: -ed & -ing Pronunciation Intonation for politeness
Culture Corner (p.18) The Euro—the Second Biggest Currency in the World Bulletin Board (p.19) Advertising Art Club			
11 THE MEDIA (pp.21-31) Warm-up Lesson 1 World News Lesson 2 The Paparazzi Lesson 3 The Advertising Game Lesson 4 What's in the Papers? Communication Workshop	Expressing opinions <i>Personally, I think ...</i> <i>I mean, it seems to me ...</i> <i>Well, in my opinion, ...</i> <i>That's right, but ...</i> <i>I agree/disagree.</i> <i>I'm afraid you're wrong.</i> Interrupting people <i>Can I interrupt a moment?</i> <i>I'd just like to say ...</i>	The passive (II) Gerunds —subject —object —predicative —attributive	Media words Phrasal verbs Words about advertisements Compound adjectives Pronunciation Word stress
Culture Corner (p.32) British Newspapers Bulletin Board (p.33) Class News			
12 CULTURE SHOCK (pp.35-45) Warm-up Lesson 1 Visiting Britain Lesson 2 Mind Your Manners Lesson 3 Living Abroad Lesson 4 The New Australians Communication Workshop	Being polite <i>Excuse me?</i> <i>Could you ..., please?</i> <i>Yes, certainly.</i> <i>So, what do you think ...?</i> <i>What about ...?</i> <i>Er, I'd rather not.</i> <i>All right, maybe.</i>	Verbs followed by -ing or Infinitive Present participles as —adverbial —predicative —attributive —object complement	Food, famous places Sports Phrasal verbs Connotations Pronunciation Intonation Difficult words
Culture Corner (p.46) Australia Bulletin Board (p.47) Help My Friend			
Project A Survey (p.49) Literature Spot 4 The Pearl (pp.50-51)		Language Problem-Solving 4 (p.52) Language Power (pp.53-89)	Writing Help (pp.90-91)

C. What's the Problem?

SKILLS DEVELOPMENT

READING	LISTENING	SPEAKING	WRITING
Who Wants to Be a Millionaire? When Less Is More Advertisements	A radio interview A dialogue A song	Shopping Selling your product	An advertisement
Strategies Identifying facts and opinions	Strategies Identifying people Listening for specific information	Strategies Describing a product Using adverbs/adjectives	Strategies Writing to persuade
Unit Diary (p.20)			
Africa on G8 Agenda London Wins The Idea Is Everything What's in the Papers?	TV programmes A radio programme	Discussing opinions Talking about newspapers	A letter to a newspaper
Strategies Dealing with culture references	Strategies Listening for specific information	Strategies Interacting in discussions	Strategies Writing a formal letter
Unit Diary (p.34)			
Visiting Britain Living Abroad The New Australians	A radio programme A dialogue A song Monologues	Comparing cultures Roleplaying Asking questions	A letter Linking: a review
Strategies Identifying facts and opinions	Strategies Identifying style	Strategies Preparing for speaking	Strategies Writing an informal letter
Unit Diary (p.48)			
Grammar Summary (pp.92-94) Mini-Grammar (pp.95-98)	Notes to the Texts (pp.99-104) Vocabulary in Each Unit (pp.105-109)	Word List (pp.110-113) Tapescript (pp.114-118)	

LEARNING TO LEARN

A Staying Motivated



Motivation

Learning English, just like learning any other foreign language, is hard work. After many years of study, experts have found that the most important thing about language learning is motivation. Here are some motivation techniques that might help you enjoy learning English more.

- ✓ Imagine yourself in the future. Imagine talking to a native speaker. Imagine you can speak English as fluently as you speak your first language.
- ✓ Remember that you are already good. You already know some English – you're reading English right now. That's a big achievement! Now it's time for more success.
- ✓ Remember there is a lot that you don't know. You are good, but your English probably isn't perfect. You should never think your English is perfect. Even if you are the best student in your class, always try to find your weak areas and work on them.
- ✓ Use English whenever you can. This is very important. The more you use English, the more you will want to learn it. Find a friend who is learning English. If you can find a friend who has a similar level of skill to you, you will be in an excellent situation.

- 1 Do you like learning English? Why or why not?
- 2 How do you think you can keep yourself motivated learning English?
- 3 Read the text quickly and underline the motivation techniques.

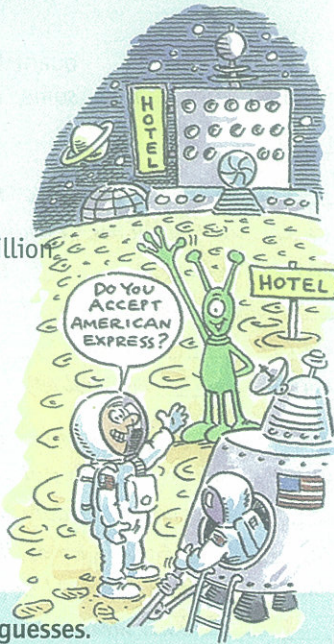
- You will have someone to talk English with. These conversations will increase your interest in English.
- Learning English will be easier, because you will be able to discuss your problems with your friend.
- You will learn more English because you will want to be better than your friend.
- ✓ Spend time learning English. Take every opportunity to practise using English for communication.
- ✓ Remember that learning English requires action. Don't put it off. Begin now.



B Word Power

1 English Quiz. Try to answer these questions.

- 1 How many people spoke English in 1000 AD?
a) 2 million b) 12 million c) 20 million
- 2 How many people speak it now?
a) 200 million b) 500 million c) a billion
- 3 What percentage of the world's e-mails are in English?
a) 50% b) 80% c) 90%
- 4 How many languages are there in the world?
a) 4,000 b) 6,500 c) 9,000



Read the text quickly and check your guesses.

English in the 21st Century

On the anniversary of Shakespeare's death, Bridget Lewis talks about the future of the English language.

- Two thousand years ago, English did not exist. A thousand years ago, it was a language used by less than two million people. Now it is the most important language in the world, spoken by more than a billion people on the planet, as their first, second or third language. English nowadays is widely used in science, business, the media and popular culture. For example, 80% of e-mails on the Internet are in English. But where will English be at the end of the 21st century?
- One view is that English is going to become even more important as a global language, being most widely used in trade and media while some other languages will become less important or just disappear. At present, over half the world's 6,500 languages are in danger of disappearing. Another view is that English is already breaking up into several separate languages. There are already dictionaries of the "New Englishes", such as Australian English, full of words that a British English speaker would not recognise. Hopefully, neither of these things will happen. Although different varieties of English will continue to develop around the world, standard English will survive for international communication. However, it is impossible for one language to totally control the world. Already, other languages are fighting back against the control of English on the Net. Governments around the world are also starting to protect smaller languages and recognise the importance of keeping a variety of cultures and languages. English will probably stay in control for a long time, but it certainly won't become the only language in the world.

2 Read the Strategies.

READING STRATEGIES: Dealing with new words in texts

- Ignore words that you don't need to know to understand the text.
- Try to guess the meaning of important words. Work out the part of speech and use the context to help you guess meanings.
- Use the dictionary only for important words that you can't guess. Use the part of speech and the context to choose the right word.

Underline all the words in the text that are new to you. Circle those that are very important to understand the text. Then use the strategies to work out the meaning of these words.

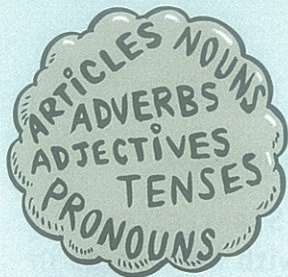
Which words did you have to look up in the dictionary?

3 Work out the parts of speech of the underlined words below. Can you guess the meanings of the words from the context? Use the dictionary to help you.

Example 1 = verb – go round

Emma left home, (1) rounded the corner on her bike and saw a (2) round metal object on the road. It went (3) round and round in circles making a strange noise. Suddenly, a man came (4) round the corner and fired a (5) round of bullets at the object before picking it up. Then he looked (6) round and said, "That's about the tenth alien I've (7) rounded up this week." He (8) rounded off his speech with a bow and several passers-by gave him a (9) round of applause. Emma thought to herself, "There are some very strange people (10) round here!"

C What's the Problem?



1 In pairs, use the words in the box to write as many sentences as possible in five minutes. The sentences must be grammatically correct and make sense!

giraffe Mary animals will home goes has was is left zoo the took a watching bigger lot study and to of yesterday tomorrow if than gone

Example
Mary has gone home.

2 Tell your answers to the class. Which of these structures did you use?

Present Simple, Present Continuous, Future forms (x 2), Present Perfect, Past Simple, Past Continuous, Conditionals, Comparison of adjectives, Quantity expressions, Modals of obligation, the Passive

3 Read the text to get the general idea. Then complete it with these words.

articles prepositions quantity expressions
a, the of, to, from, in some, all

Example 1 All

(1) _____ people are amazed when I tell them that Latin was my favourite subject at school. Some of them don't even know that Latin was (2) _____ language that was spoken (3) _____ Europe for 1,000 years! It was (4) _____ Romans who first spoke (5) _____ Latin language and as they defeated (6) _____ people (7) _____ Europe, they spread Latin everywhere, (8) _____ England (9) _____ Germany.

Latin is now (10) _____ dead language, meaning that no one speaks it in daily life anymore. However, Latin is still around us! Every time we use some words (11) _____ English, we are actually using Latin. Although Latin sounds very different (12) _____ English, words like "lunar" come (13) _____ Latin. For example, the "Lunar Year" is based on (14) _____ moon, and guess what, (15) _____ Latin, lunar means moon!

I know that most (16) _____ my friends think I'm crazy for loving Latin, but (17) _____ find me very useful. These friends are (18) _____ doctors and they're always coming (19) _____ me and asking me to help them study (20) _____ Latin medical terms!

4 How well can you use the structures below? Use this scale.

- *** I can use this structure with very few problems.
- ** I have a few problems and I make mistakes.
- * I don't understand this structure!

Question forms	Prepositions (e.g. of, to, from, in)
Present Simple	Modals of obligation
Present Continuous	The Passive (present, past)
Present Perfect	Comparison of adjectives
Future forms	Countables/uncountables
Past Simple	Quantity expressions (e.g. some, a lot)
Past Continuous	Articles (a, an, the)
Conditionals	

5 Look at the ways of organising grammar notes below.

- a) tables (e.g. of verb tenses)
- b) lists (e.g. of irregular verbs)
- c) time lines (e.g. to contrast tenses)
- d) examples with translations (e.g. to contrast structures with Chinese)

Choose one of the grammar areas from Exercise 4 and organise some notes. Use the Grammar Summary on pages 92-93 to help you.



10 Money

In this unit you will...

- Read magazine and newspaper articles, and advertisements.
- Practise shopping, bargaining, complaining and selling.
- Listen to a radio programme, shopping dialogues and a song.
- Write an advertisement.
- Learn about quantity words and expressions as well as infinitives.

Warm-up

1 Look at the list below. What is important to you? Tell the class.

- to have lots of money/a good job/a big car
- to be healthy/with my family/with my friends
- to help other people/to do well in exams

Example: *The most important thing to me is to be healthy.*

2 Listen. Which of the people in the photos (A–D) are speaking?

3 Complete the sentences with the verbs in the box in the correct form.

KEY WORDS

borrow, collect, earn, lend, lose, make, need, save, spend

Example
He lost his wallet yesterday when he was in a crowded bus.

- 1 If you _____ money, you can ask a friend to _____ you some or _____ money from a bank.
- 2 His company _____ a lot of money and so he _____ a good salary.
- 3 She is careful with money – she doesn't _____ very much. She _____ £40 a week.
- 4 At the moment she _____ money for charity.





I A Material World

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Reading

Before you start

1 Would you like to be a millionaire? Why or why not? Tell the class.

“Who wants to be a Millionaire? I don’t,” says Charles Gray



(ADAPTED FROM *IN SEARCH OF HAPPINESS* BY ANGUS DEAYTON AND LISE MAYER)

Angus Deayton interviews ex-millionaire Charles Gray

A lot of people are determined to become a millionaire. They spend half their time dreaming up ways of getting rich, and the rest of their time thinking about all the enjoyable things they would do once they got rich. But do all millionaires find the happiness that they thought they would get when they achieve their goals? Some millionaires continue to be concerned about money when they become millionaires. They are hardworking to get all that money. Then they are hardworking to make sure they never lose it!

But there are people who have turned their backs on their millions and found different ways to be happy in their lives. Charles Gray is one example.

Sixteen years ago, Charles was a college professor with a huge six-bedroom house and \$2 million. Today he lives in a small dormitory room where there is only second-hand furniture. There are certainly no signs that Charles was a rich man! There is a small garden outside with a few fruit trees. Charles grows some vegetables and a few flowers. He gets his clothes and a

lot of other things from charity shops.

But Charles appreciates this change. He was pleased to give up the lifestyle of a rich man. He was tired of being a person who had everything in a world where many people had nothing. He made the choice to give all his money away. And this, he said, brought him happiness.

“A few years ago,” says Charles, “I was a millionaire, but was aware there were a lot of hungry people in the world.” Therefore he gave away all his money to charities. When he had two thousand dollars left, he gave away small bank notes in the streets of local poor areas. Did he feel like Father Christmas? “It was a lot of fun,” says Charles.

Charles believes that many people want to earn a lot of money so that they will not have any worries. However, most people never make much money. Charles Gray decided to drop out and has discovered that having only a little money makes you free. Are there any things he misses? “No, I’m much happier now. I wouldn’t go back to being rich for anything – no way.”

Read to learn

2 Read the article. Decide if the statements below are true (T), false (F) or there is no information (NI).

- Charles Gray was a rich businessman.
- He hasn’t got a stove in his dormitory.
- He has got a vegetable garden.
- Charles gave his money away to poor people.
- People thought he was drunk when he gave away small bank notes in the street.
- He was happier when he was rich.

3 Match the verbs from the text with the correct meanings.

- | | |
|----------------|---|
| 1 to give away | a) to return |
| 2 to drop out | b) to stop doing something |
| 3 to give up | c) to change or leave a lifestyle |
| 4 to go back | d) to give someone something you don’t need |

Voice your opinion

4 Do you think money makes you happy? Are there more important things in life?



Grammar

some/any/no; a lot of/many/much

5 Complete this interview with Paul McGinty, a millionaire. Choose the correct word from the brackets.

Journalist: How (1) _____ (much/many) houses have you got?

Mr McGinty: Well, I haven't got (2) _____ (much/many). I've only got (3) _____ (a few/a little) – one in Monaco, one in Paris, and one in New York.

Journalist: Are there (4) _____ (some/any) things in the world that you haven't got?

Mr McGinty: Actually, there are (5) _____ (no/some) things I haven't got. I need (6) _____ (some/any) furniture for my castle. It's difficult to find.

Journalist: How (7) _____ (many/much) money have you got exactly?

Mr McGinty: Well, that's a difficult question. I'm a busy man. I've got (8) _____ (no/some) time to count it.

all/none; both/neither

6 Put *all*, *both*, *none* or *neither* in the gaps.

I'm not very careful with money. I spend (1) _____ of it very fast and save (2) _____ of it. (3) _____ my parents get angry with me, especially my dad. And now (4) _____ of my parents give me money. But I'm a very happy person. (5) _____ my friends like me and (6) _____ of them say I'm greedy.

another, other, the other, the second

7 Fill in the gaps with *another*, *the other*, *other* or *the second*.

- Some people are greedy, _____ people are generous.
- My friend Susan never saves money, but _____ friend of mine, Mark, never spends a penny.
- There are two things I never buy. One is popcorn, _____ is cigarettes.
- These chocolates are delicious. I think I'll buy _____ box.
- I've made only three New Year's resolutions: the first is to learn more, _____ is to take up a sport and the third is to go to the theatre.
- He's very rude and he never thinks about _____ people.
- The restaurant was full so we had to look for _____ one.
- The tennis final wasn't exciting – Agassi was great, but I can't even remember the name of _____ player.

➔ Grammar Summary 1-3, on page 92.

Language in Use

8 Work in pairs and imagine what was in Charles Gray's old home and is in his dormitory now. Talk about it using the vocabulary below to help you.

armchair, carpets, vase, paintings, furniture, plants, gardens, six bedrooms

some, any, no, a lot, many, much, all, none, both, neither, another, other, the other

- Example A: Charles Gray had *some* carpets in his six-bedroom house. But now he has *none*.
 B: *All* furniture in his old home was expensive. But now he only has *some* second-hand furniture.

2 The Right Price

SKILLS FOCUS

Listening

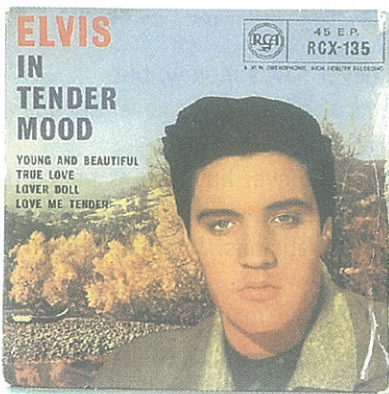
Before you start

1 Match the words with the definitions. Check your answers in a dictionary.

KEY WORDS

a bargain, to bargain, cash, discount, product

- 1 something made in a factory
- 2 something that is of very good value
- 3 money taken off the full price
- 4 to discuss the price of something in order to agree a lower price
- 5 money in coins and notes



old record

2 Look at the pictures. Guess the price of the objects.

Example

I think the fax machine is about ...

3 Study these Key Words before you listen.

KEY WORDS

enthusiastic, ashamed, valuable, firm, confident, aggressive, politely

Listen to learn

4 Listen to Part 1 of an interview with Helen Cooper and answer these questions:

- 1 Which of the following do most British people bargain for?
a) houses b) groceries c) clothes d) cars
- 2 Where does Helen say you can't bargain?
a) supermarket b) shops c) markets
- 3 Which things in the photos would Helen bargain for?



fax machine



necklace

5 Listen to Part 2. Which of these strategies does Helen use when she bargains?

- a) She is friendly but firm.
- b) She is confident but not aggressive.
- c) She only says bad things about the product.
- d) She is not ashamed to say she has not got much money.
- e) If the person says "no", she is annoyed.



scarfs

6 Listen to Helen in the market and complete the sentences in the Function File with words from the list.

come on, I'll take (x2), that's it, I'll give you, offer, cash, fair, worth, good quality

Function File

Shopping and bargaining

They're quite pretty and they're silk, but they aren't (1) _____.

(2) _____ ten pounds.

They're not really (3) _____ more than twelve pounds.

(4) _____, you're not selling much today.

(5) _____ seventeen.

One last (6) _____, fifteen pounds.

That's (7) _____.

Sixteen pounds, (8) _____ . And

(9) _____.

OK, (10) _____ two.

Pronunciation

7 Listen to the first part of the dialogue again. The underlined expressions have a rising intonation. This sounds polite.

Salesgirl: Morning. Can I help you?

Helen: No, thanks. I'm just looking. Excuse me? Er, how much is this scarf, please?

Salesman: It's twenty pounds.

Helen: Can I have a look at it, please?

Salesman: Sure.

Listen to the dialogue again and repeat it.



Speaking

8 In pairs, practise the dialogue in Exercise 7 with the objects in the box. Practise getting the intonation right. Take turns to be the customer.

KEY WORDS

a silk blouse (£15), a CD (£12), a pair of boots (£50), a leather jacket (£90), a pair of jeans (£30), a vest (£17)

9 Choose something you are carrying or wearing (e.g. your watch). Think of a price to "sell" it to your partner. Then, in pairs, bargain for the object.

Seller	Buyer
Say hello. Offer to help.	Ask the price of something.
Say the price.	Ask to look at it.
Give him/her the object.	Comment on the object. Make an offer.
Reject the offer. Reduce price.	Offer to pay in cash. Make third offer.
Give final price.	Accept.

Comparing Cultures

What can you bargain for in China?

Have you ever tried to bargain?

Was it hard or was it easy to do?

QUOTE ... UNQUOTE

"The customer is always right."

H. Gordon Selfridge, department store owner

3 Your Money

Reading

Before you start

- 1 Do you get pocket money from your parents? How much pocket money do you get each month?
- 2 What things do you like to spend money on? Tell your partner.

KEY WORDS

clothes, books, CDs, computer games, food, games in amusement parks, giving to charity

Read to learn

- 3 Read the newspaper article quickly and find the words that mean the following.

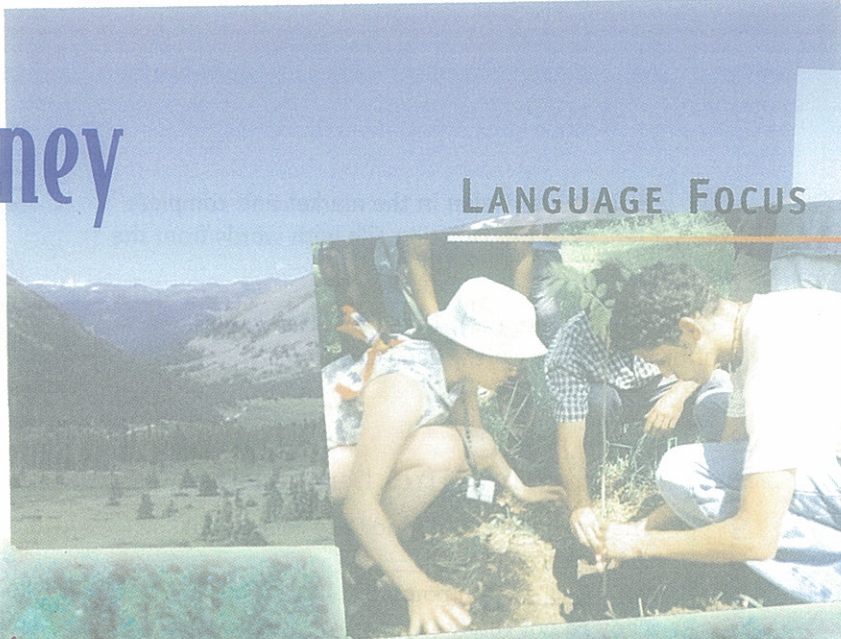
- 1 about
- 2 plants such as wheat, rice or fruit grown by farmers
- 3 being worn away by water, wind or sand
- 4 unable to understand something
- 5 opinion
- 6 have something inside
- 7 the top part of the earth in which plants grow
- 8 take something away from a place

- 4 Read the newspaper article again and answer the questions.

- 1 Which river is being talked about in the article?
- 2 In which area has soil erosion almost destroyed farming land?
- 3 What can people do to help stop soil erosion?
- 4 Why does the writer say 5 yuan is important?
- 5 Which example is given to show that 5 yuan can help to develop a local economy?

Voice your opinion

- 5 Think about the local environment you live in. What can you and your friends do to improve it? Discuss with a partner and tell the class.



When less is more

What can you do with 5 yuan? Not a lot, you may think. Well, if buying a bag of candies or cookies doesn't appeal to you, how about buying a tree instead? Yes, a tree along the banks of the Yellow River to be exact.

- 5 Every year, approximately 1.6 billion tons of soil flows into the Yellow River, China's second longest river. The soil contains materials to keep the natural balance of the area. Over time, a lot of soil has been removed, which has caused serious erosion of the land along the River. In some areas in Shanxi Province,
- 10 this has destroyed almost all the land, and has forced many local farmers to move to other areas.

It is a huge job to control Yellow River erosion. Many people believe this kind of work is best done by government or international organisations. You may agree with this point of

- 15 view. If so, it is time for you to think again.

In fact, it is you who have the most important role to play in stopping Yellow River erosion. Did you know the importance of your 5 yuan? For a start, it can buy you a tree, which will help make soil stay on the land. On land with rich soil, local

- 20 farmers can grow crops to make a living. With the money they earn from their crops, farmers buy goods or services. This helps to develop local economies.

Still puzzled how your 5 yuan can have so much effect? Well, just take a look at the fact below. Since 1997, a tree-planting

- 25 programme has changed the Jiuchengong Valley in Inner Mongolia into a green homeland. Visitors from all over the world now come to admire this great achievement. What is more, the success of the programme has greatly improved the lives of the local people. Just think: all this started with 5 yuan!
- 30 So when you have 5 yuan in your pocket next time, think twice about how to use the money. Remember you can use it to buy a tree and create a green future for our motherland, our people and yourself.



Vocabulary

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in the box.

remove, approximately, erosion, balance, puzzle, importance, contain, economy

- _____ 10,000 people took part in the tree-planting exercise.
- Many farming areas in Shaanxi Province are affected by soil _____.
- Farmers know the _____ of stopping erosion.
- This cup _____ water but that one is empty.
- I feel _____ why Ken wears black all the time.
- Farming plays an important role in the country's _____.
- It's important to keep a _____ between making and spending money.
- Please _____ your dirty shoes from the bathroom.

Grammar

INFINITIVES

7 Read these sentences from the text. Underline the infinitives and discuss how they are used.

- The soil contains materials to keep the natural balance of the area.
- ... this has destroyed almost all the land, and has forced many local farmers to move to other areas.
- It is a huge job to control Yellow River erosion.
- This helps to develop local economies.
- So when you have 5 yuan in your pocket next time, think twice about how to use the money.
- On land with rich soil, local farmers can grow crops to make a living.
- Visitors from all over the world now come to admire this great achievement.

⇒ Grammar Summary 4, on page 92.

8 Choose the correct form of the verbs in the box to complete the sentences.

damage, study, take, persuade, make, learn, stay, deal with, show, create

- At that time, women were expected _____ at home, take care of their husbands and children, and behave like ladies.
- I think it's really important _____ friends with different kinds of people.
- They were determined _____ the opportunity to advance across the river.
- Is it possible _____ from the experiences of others?
- I finally managed _____ her to give up the idea of buying a diamond ring.
- I stopped smoking so as not _____ my baby's health.
- The man emptied his pockets _____ that he wasn't carrying drugs.
- The software makes it easy _____ colourful pictures.
- A person like him is difficult _____.

9 Complete the dialogue. Fill in the gaps with the correct form of the verbs in the brackets.

- Jim: Hi Pete. What are you doing?
 Pete: Hi Jim. It's my mum's birthday tomorrow, but I don't know what (1) _____ (buy) her.
 Jim: Yeah, sometimes it's difficult (2) _____ (choose) a good present. How about a necklace?
 Pete: I don't have enough money (3) _____ (buy) her expensive jewellery.
 Jim: How come?
 Pete: I spent all my pocket money on computer games yesterday.
 Jim: You should save some of your pocket money every week.
 Pete: I know, but her birthday is tomorrow! Can I borrow 20 yuan from you, please?
 Jim: No, I don't want (4) _____ (lend) you any money. You never return it!
 Pete: Where can I get the money?
 Jim: You could ask your mum (5) _____ (give) it to you!

Language in Use

10 Do you have a plan for the use of your pocket money? Write about what you do with the money.

Example My parents give me 50 yuan each month. I use 10 yuan to buy my favourite sports magazine ...

4 Advertisements

SKILLS FOCUS

Reading

Before you start

1 What do you think of these gadgets? Use the Key Words to help you.

Example

I think electric toothbrushes are not very practical.

electric toothbrush, laptop computer, mobile phone, MP3, e-dictionary, radio alarm clock

KEY WORDS

cheap, convenient, easy (to use), expensive, practical, reliable, useful, useless

Read to learn

2 Look at the advertisements. Which of the gadgets do you think are real?

3 Read the text again. List the advantages of each gadget according to the advertisements.

Example

Soundweave: intelligent and new ...

Remote Headphones

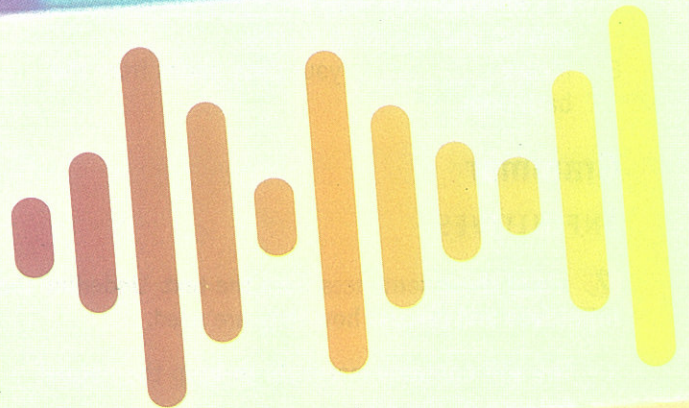
These fantastic headphones have no wires. You can listen to your favourite programmes while you are walking round the house or garden! You can listen to relaxing music in the bath!

With Remote Headphones you can also go up to sixty metres away from your radio or TV. The signals go through glass, doors and walls. These amazing headphones give you the freedom to listen on the go plus top sound quality.



Zip-on Sneakers

These zip-on sneakers are both fun and a life-saver. Zip-on soles could not be easier! Breathing new life into your worn-out kicks and sparing you the agony of separation anxiety from parting with those comfy favourites. Don't toss the shoe ... replace its sole.



Soundweave

The intelligent new Soundweave music app finds the perfect music to compliment your exciting and sometimes draining daily tasks. Soundweave will find and sync the perfect music selection to each activity or task in your diary and play you through your day, calmly and effectively. Simply sync Soundweave to your smartphone calendar and enjoy your power playlist.

Feline Floor Cleaners

Do you find housework tiring and boring? Are you worried about the state of your house or flat? Have you got a cat that walks round your flat all day? Here is the perfect solution. It will change your life. Put the floor cleaners on your cat, and sit back and relax. The cleaners are made from good quality material. They are very practical and easy to wash. And they're cheap! Write to: Animal Magic, P.O. Box 123



READING STRATEGIES: Facts and opinions

- To find opinions, look for adjectives (e.g. amazing/comfy).
- Facts give information which is, in theory, true. (e.g. has an automatic focus)

Now find two "facts" and three "opinions" in the advertisements.

4 Find examples of these linking words in the text:

also, plus, both

Write two sentences using the cues and words in brackets.

Example

E-dictionaries are small and convenient. They are also useful for homework.

- 1 e-dictionaries – small and convenient – useful for homework (also)
- 2 mobile phones – small and useful – cheaper than before (plus)
- 3 laptop computers – very expensive – very reliable (also)
- 4 radio alarm clocks – useful – cheap (both)

Vocabulary: Adjectives

5 Complete the table with adjectives from the advertisements.

"-ed" adjectives	<i>interested</i>
"-ing" adjectives	<i>amazing</i>

6 Complete the sentences with the correct alternative.

- 1 I find shopping very (bored/boring). I get very (bored/boring) in supermarkets.
- 2 I get (tired/tiring) when I have a lot of homework. For me, maths is very (tired/tiring).
- 3 I am (interested/interesting) in photography. I think black and white photos are more (interested/interesting).
- 4 I don't find football very (excited/exciting). I only get (excited/exciting) when I watch the World Cup.
- 5 The president said in the news that he was very _____ (pleasing/pleased) with the country's economic progress, but I found some of what he said very _____ (worried/worrying).
- 6 There was a really _____ (excited/exciting) basketball game in the stadium. However, I was a bit _____ (disappointing/disappointed) that my team lost, though!

Speaking

7 Work in groups. One person chooses something from the list below or any other products. The others have five Yes/No questions to find out what it is.

Example

A: Do you wear it?

B: No.

C: Is it expensive?

B: Yes, it is.

<i>CD player</i>	<i>refrigerator</i>
<i>computer</i>	<i>rice cooker</i>
<i>leather jacket</i>	<i>electric kettle</i>
<i>translation pen</i>	<i>air-conditioner</i>
<i>mobile phone</i>	<i>washing machine</i>
<i>MP3</i>	<i>cash machine</i>

QUOTE ... UNQUOTE

"The best advertisement is a good product."

Alan H. Meyer, American advertising executive



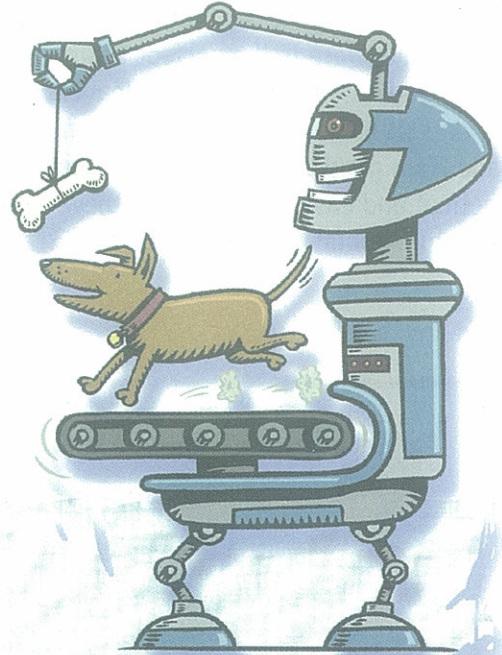
Communication Workshop

Writing: An Advertisement

Before you start

Read the advertisement. Copy and complete the information about the gadget.

What is it called?	
What can you use it for?	
Where can you use it?	
What is it made of?	
What are its advantages?	
How much does it cost?	
Where can you get it?	



Save Time and Energy

Do you ever feel tired when your dog wants to go for a walk? Does your dog ever get bored? Is your dog getting fat? Here is the perfect solution to all your problems. The new K9 Dogwalker will change your life – and your dog’s too. The K9 exercises your dog in your own home. You don’t have to do anything. You can sit back and relax!

The amazing K9 is made in Italy by Cantek. It is made of good quality plastic and has an attractive, modern design too. The dogwalker has a reliable electric motor plus a small computer. You can use the computer to plan your dog’s exercise. The dogwalker weighs only ten kilos. It is easy and convenient to take with you when you go on holiday.

The dogwalker isn’t expensive either. It is a bargain at only £39.99! Contact: Cantek Products, Whitcliffe Cottage, Orleton, Nr Ashford, Kent

Write a similar advertisement for a gadget. Follow the stages.

Stage 1

Choose a gadget (serious or humorous). Use the questions in the table above to think about ideas for your gadget.

Stage 2

Use your notes to write your advertisement.

➡ *Writing Help 1 (layout, linking, and useful vocabulary), on page 90.*

Stage 3

Check your advertisement.

Speaking: Selling Your Gadget



Before you start

Listen to the dialogue. Complete it with the Key Words in the box.

KEY WORDS

adverbs: incredibly, extremely, not very, quite, really, very

- Chris: Have you heard about the new dogwalker? It's (1) _____ great!
- Jane: No, what's that? What does it do?
- Chris: Well, it's a gadget. It takes your dog for a walk. It's (2) _____ convenient.
- Jane: But it's (3) _____ useful. Have you got a picture of it?
- Chris: Here it is. It's got a brilliant design, with an (4) _____ reliable motor – and a computer, too!
- Jane: Why has it got a computer?
- Chris: Well, you can programme the dog's walks. And the machine's easy to carry.
- Jane: How much does it cost?
- Chris: It's only £39.99. That's (5) _____ cheap.
- Jane: It isn't. That's (6) _____ expensive! I'm sorry. I'm not buying it.

Now sell your gadget to other students. Follow the stages.

Stage 1

Prepare to talk about the gadget you designed in the Writing Workshop. Look at your notes and the dialogue above. Practise saying sentences to yourself. Don't read sentences from your description!

Example

My watch-computer's truly convenient!

Stage 2

Go round the class. Try to sell your gadget to the other students. Ask questions about the other gadgets.

Example

A: *Look at this really amazing e-textbook.*

B: *Mmmm. What is it for? What does it do?*

A: *Well, it's a disk to replace our textbook.*

Talkback

Which gadgets did you like? Which gadget would you like to buy? Who was the best seller? Why? Use these phrases:

creative ideas, attractive design, good communication

Listening

Listen to three sentences. Choose the correct meaning, a, b or c, according to the way each sentence is stressed.

- The man at the back in the blue jacket.
 - not the woman
 - not the front
 - not the green jacket
- There is no doubt that it will help us to cure all sorts of illnesses.
 - not some doubt
 - not identify
 - not diseases
- By the year 2020, over 20 percent of the population will be over eighty.
 - not the year 2010
 - not 30 percent
 - not over 90

Work in pairs. Practise saying the same sentences but with a different stress to show the other meanings.

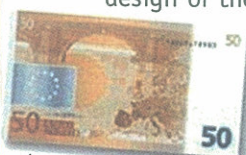
Culture Corner

The Euro - the Second Biggest Currency in the World

On 1st January 2002, twelve European countries started using the new euro as their official currency. The euro soon became the second biggest currency in the world.

Introducing the euro was not a simple matter. There were many things to consider. One problem was the design of the coins and notes. Usually, a

currency is associated with one country only so it is easier to find images and symbols to put on the coins and notes. However, for the euro, twelve different countries were involved, and each country was as keen as the other to be represented.



The notes were designed by Robert Kalina of Austria and he developed an interesting solution to the problem. His designs show seven different periods in European architecture. However, instead of showing real, existing structures, he used photographs to make up imaginary structures that best represented the different architectural styles. The fronts of the notes show windows or gates while

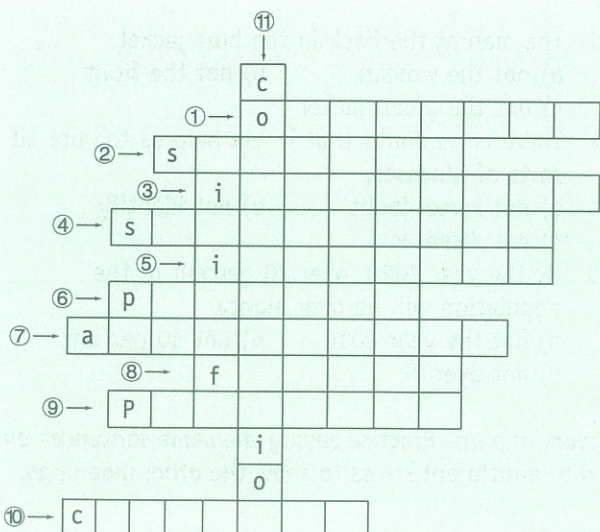
the backs show bridges. This is to represent communication between the people of Europe.



the European flag

All euro notes show the European flag and a map of Europe. The 12 stars on the European flag represent the 12 countries within the European Union, including Austria, Belgium, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Ireland, Italy, Luxembourg, the Netherlands, Portugal, and Spain.

The coins were easier to design. Each country was allowed to design their own euro coins which could be used in any of the participating countries. For example, Spain put one of their famous writers, called Cervantes, on one of their coins and Austria made a coin with Mozart's face on it.



Find words in the text that mean the following and write them in the table.

- 1 approved by the government or a powerful body
- 2 designs which represent an idea or a belief
- 3 in imagination only, not real
- 4 things that people make or build
- 5 included, taking part
- 6 times
- 7 linked, known to be related
- 8 very well-known
- 9 a country in Europe
- 10 money
- 11 talking or exchanging ideas

Bulletin Board

The Advertising Art Club (AAC) is collecting adverts for their monthly Advertisement Show. Read the notice and last month's "Advertisement of the Month". Please add your advertisement to the bulletin board.

Advertising Art Club

We are the AAC — a group of people who collect all kinds of advertisements. In our monthly Advertisement Show, we choose an 'Advertisement of the Month' and we also run a competition selecting the best home-made advertisement. The winner of this competition takes home a small prize. To be a part of this exciting event, all you need to do is enter your favourite advertisement. It can be a TV, radio, newspaper or magazine ad. Or, take part in our competition by simply designing your own! Have some fun with the art of ads and join us for this month's Advertisement Show.

Walk on Water!

Have you ever dreamed of walking on water? Well, now *Shoes-on-water* will fulfil your crazy dream!

With *Shoes-on-water* you can walk on water as easily as you walk on land. In fact, you can walk even faster! *Shoes-on-water* are made of wood and glass and the tiny oars under each shoe are made of metal. When you step into these boat-like shoes on land, the oars stay hidden, but as soon as you step onto water, the oars appear and start moving you forwards with ease. Comfortable and safe, these attractive shoes can be worn to any event. Wear them to school or take them on holiday — these shoes will change your life! Go now to our website to get more information — and hurry, there's a special discount until the end of May!



Unit Diary

- 1 My favourite lesson(s) in this unit is/are _____.
- Lesson 1 A Material World Lesson 2 The Right Price
 Lesson 3 Your Money Lesson 4 Advertisements
- 2 In this unit, I've learned _____.
- about money about shopping and bargaining
 about complaining and selling about advertisements
 about how to write an advertisement
- 3 I find it _____ to review infinitives.
- very necessary necessary not necessary
I have _____ difficulty with quantity words and expressions.
 great some a little no
- 4 The new words I've learned and remembered in this unit are:

- 5 The new words I still have difficulty spelling and remembering are:

- 6 I _____ (want to don't want to) be a millionaire, because _____

- 7 I find the following ways of learning helpful:
- looking for adjectives to find opinions in reading
 understanding grammar rules through exercises
 noting intonation changes in listening and speaking
 paying attention to advertisements in English
 making eye contact when speaking
- 8 I find the most enjoyable part(s) in this unit is/are _____.
- reading a news report about an ex-millionaire
 listening to dialogues about bargaining
 vocabulary about money matters
 writing an advertisement
 speaking
- 9 Compared with other units, I think this unit is _____.
- more interesting less interesting more difficult easier nearly the same
- 10 I can see I've made _____ progress in learning English in this unit.
 great some little no

My plan for the next unit is:
I need to _____



11 The Media

In this unit you will...

- Read newspaper and magazine articles and a formal letter.
- Write a formal letter to a newspaper.
- Listen to extracts from TV and radio programmes and a song.
- Talk about the media, paparazzi and advertising.
- Learn about passives and gerunds.

Warm-up

- 1 Which of the things from the Key Words box can you see in the pictures?

KEY WORDS

TV programmes: chat show, quiz show, soap opera, the news

The Internet: website

Magazines about: cars, computers, current affairs, fashion, films, music, sport, travel

Newspapers: local newspaper, national newspaper

Use a dictionary and read Culture Corner to check the three different kinds of British newspapers.

- 2  Listen and identify the programmes.

a chat show, a quiz show, the news, a sports programme

- 3 Read the questions. Then, in pairs, tell your partner about yourself.

Example *I listen to the radio every morning while I'm getting ready for school. And you?*

- 1 Do you listen to the radio much? Which programmes?
- 2 How many hours of TV do you watch each week?
- 3 What are your favourite TV programmes?
- 4 What magazines do you read regularly?
- 5 Do you often read a newspaper? If so, which one?
- 6 Which paper do your parents read?
- 7 Do you sometimes use the Internet? What for?





Reading

Before you start

- 1 What areas of the world are often in the news at the moment? Why? Tell the class.

Example *The Middle East.*
Yesterday there was ...

Read to learn

- 2 Read the articles and answer these questions.

- 1 What does "G8" stand for?
- 2 Which nations are in the "G8"?
- 3 Why is this year's meeting unusual?
- 4 What are some of the major problems in Africa?
- 5 How can the G8 nations help Africa's poorest countries?
- 6 What important news were London people reacting to at lunchtime on July 6, 2005?
- 7 How were they reacting to this news?
- 8 Why did this news have historical importance?

Grammar

THE PASSIVE (II)

- 3 Complete the sentences in the table with these words:

have been, was, is, will be,
was being, can be, is being,
had been, is going to be



Africa on G8 Agenda

July 5, 2005

Scotland

The Group of Eight, or G8, was formed by eight of the world's wealthiest nations in 1998. The G8 is made up of political leaders from France, the United States, Britain, Germany, Japan, Italy, Canada and Russia. They meet every summer to discuss major problems that concern the whole world.

It is going to be remembered as a historical meeting this year, as the topic of Africa will be discussed in detail. Widespread poverty in Africa means that many people there cannot get the water, clothing, housing, electricity or education they need. AIDS is another problem of great concern so sex education and health care administration are extremely important.

Reforms have been demanded by people from all over the world. They want the leaders to cancel the debt of Africa's poorest countries so that the problems there can be prevented from getting any worse. Their belief is that this is the only way for many of these nations to escape their painful pasts.

Structure

Present Simple
Past Simple

Present Continuous
Past Continuous

Present Perfect
Past Perfect
will
can

be going to

The Passive

The G8 (1) *is* made up of political leaders from ...

The Group of Eight, or G8, (2) _____ formed by eight of the world's wealthiest nations in 1998.

The news (3) _____ celebrated by crowds in the streets.

At 12:45 UK time today, the name of the host city for ...

(4) _____ announced by IOC in Singapore.

Reforms (5) _____ demanded by people from all over the world.

London's name (6) _____ announced twice before.

..., as the topic of Africa (7) _____ discussed in detail.

They want the leaders to ... so that the problems there

(8) _____ prevented from getting any worse.

It (9) _____ remembered as a historical meeting this year, ...



LONDON WINS

July 6, 2005

London

At 12:45 UK time today, the name of the host city for the 2012 Olympic Games was being announced by the International Olympics Committee (IOC) in Singapore. It was London. London's name had been announced twice before, in 1908 and 1948, so it now has the distinction of being the first city to host the event three times.

Applications to host the games had also been made by Moscow, Madrid, New York and Paris. In the end, it came down to a choice between Paris and London.

The news is being celebrated by crowds in the streets. Cheering people can also be seen everywhere: in pubs, homes and offices all over London. Prince William, who is now in New Zealand, said he was delighted that the 2012 Olympic Games would be held in London and he was looking forward to the Games.

- 4 Read these sentences from the text. Find the phrase that says who the "doer" of the action is in each sentence. Is the "doer" important?

The Group of Eight, or G8, was formed by eight of the world's wealthiest nations in 1998.

... the name of the host city for the 2012 Olympic Games was being announced by the International Olympics Committee (IOC) ...

➡ Grammar Summary 5, on page 92.

- 5 Put the verbs in brackets into the Passive. Use an appropriate tense.

- 1 He _____ just _____ (offer) a job with a good salary.
- 2 The ceremony _____ (report) in the news last night.
- 3 I think cinemas _____ (replace) by TVs and computers in the next century.
- 4 This programme became very popular after it _____ (award) the best TV Show of the Year.
- 5 Her latest series of articles _____ (publish) in a national newspaper at the moment.

- 6 Rewrite the newspaper report below using the Passive where possible.

Example *Central London was hit by four powerful bombs during this morning's rush hour.*

Bombs Hit London

July 7, 2005

London

Four powerful bombs hit Central London during this morning's rush hour. Three exploded on London Underground lines and another on a bus.

No one has yet discovered who is responsible for the incidents but police are already collecting evidence. They hope that they can find an explanation for the attacks.

Language in Use

- 7 Work in groups of four. Suppose an international organisation has provided a one-week camp for some African children with AIDS. Write a short 100-word news report for a local newspaper. Try to use the Passive.

Example *Twenty-six children aged 6 to 13 arrived at the camp. They were taken care of by 6 volunteers including primary school teachers and nurses from local hospitals ...*



2 The Paparazzi

SKILLS FOCUS

Listening

Before you start

1 What do you know about the paparazzi? Tell the class.

Example

The paparazzi are also called "puppy team" in Chinese. They take photographs of famous people's private lives.

2 You will hear these words in the radio programme you are going to listen to. Match these words with their definitions.

- | | |
|--------------------|---|
| 1 analyse | a) begin to happen |
| 2 arise | b) allowed by law |
| 3 blame | c) prepared to do something |
| 4 willing | d) examine or think about something carefully in order to understand it |
| 5 self-employed | e) do something in order to protect someone from being attacked |
| 6 legal | f) try to do something |
| 7 attempt | g) agree with or support |
| 8 defend | h) a series of events |
| 9 argument | i) money made from doing business |
| 10 process | j) reason |
| 11 profit | k) working for yourself |
| 12 be in favour of | l) say that someone is responsible for something bad |


Listen to learn

LISTENING STRATEGIES:

Listening for specific information

- Before you listen, read the questions. Try to guess possible answers (e.g. dates, places, names, numbers, objects, actions, reasons).
- While you are listening, listen for words from the questions or synonyms of them (e.g. star/celebrity).
- Don't worry if you don't understand everything. Concentrate on the important words.
- Write down your answers in note form. Don't use full sentences.



3  Now listen to the radio programme and complete the notes which summarise Dr Lindbrow's words.

- 1 The paparazzi are self-employed _____.
- 2 The _____ is often blamed for encouraging the paparazzi.
- 3 Nowadays, selling photographs of famous people has become _____.
- 4 The British law says that it is _____ to take photographs of famous people in public.
- 5 The paparazzi sometimes risk breaking the _____ to take photos which they can sell for good _____.
- 6 Since Princess Diana's death in 1997, a lot of people's attitudes have changed and more and more people dislike the _____ and what they do.

4 According to Dr Lindbrow, which of the following attempts of the paparazzi is probably not legal?

- 1 Pretending to be a repair man to get into the house of a film star and take pictures of her daily life.
- 2 Hiring a helicopter to take pictures of the film star's big house from the air.
- 3 Hiding in the bush outside the film star's house to take pictures of her when she comes out.
- 4 Renting a speed boat to take pictures of the film star on the beach.

Voice your opinion

5 What do you think of the argument that taking photographs of famous people is part of news reporting? Do you agree? Why or why not?

6 Listen to the discussion between Katy and James. Which of them expresses these opinions?

- The media should respect famous people's privacy.
- Famous people shouldn't complain when the paparazzi follow them.
- The media is getting worse and worse.
- There is too much violence on TV nowadays.
- The government should control TV programmes to protect children.

7 Look at the Function File and try to complete the expressions with these words:

can't, may, opinion, completely, against, in favour, personally, right, totally, seems, true, afraid, don't

Function File

Opinions, agreement and disagreement

Expressing an opinion

- _____, I think that's her problem.
- I mean, it _____ to me that ...
- Well, in my _____, this shows ...
- Personally, I am _____ too much control.
- I'm _____ of some kind of control.

Expressing agreement

- That's _____, but ...
- You _____ be right, but ...
- I agree. You're _____, there's ...
- I _____ agree.

Expressing disagreement

- I _____ disagree.
- I'm _____ you're wrong.
- I'm afraid I _____ agree with you.
- I _____ agree.

Listen again and check your answers.

Which expressions above show strong agreement or disagreement?

Pronunciation

8 Listen to four sentences from the radio programme again. How many words are there in each sentence? Contractions count as two words.

Example 1 *Tonight, we're going to analyse the problem of the paparazzi.* = 11 words

Listen again and write down all the words. Which important words are stressed? Repeat the sentences.

Example 1 *Tonight, we're going to analyse the problem of the paparazzi.*

Writing and Speaking

9 Look at the opinions in Exercise 6. Decide if you agree or disagree with them.

10 Write notes with your opinions about these things:

- the quality of TV programmes
- control of TV programmes
- famous people, privacy and the media

*privacy – yes – right to privacy very important;
quality of programmes – some good programmes
but too many game shows
control of TV – yes – too much violence*

11 In pairs, use your notes to discuss your opinions of the media.

Example

A: *Personally, I think that TV is getting worse.*

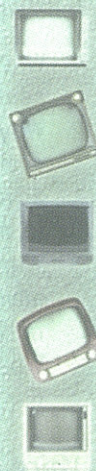
B: *I agree. There are too many ...*

Tell your opinions to the class.

Vocabulary: Phrasal Verbs

12 Complete the questionnaire by choosing the correct preposition or adverb.

- In your family, who is usually the first person to *turn to/on* the TV when you get home?
- What programmes make you want to *turn off/over* to another channel?
- When you're watching, do you ever *turn away/up* when something is extremely frightening or exciting?
- If somebody *turns up/on* at your house, do you *turn* the TV *over/off* or do you leave it on?
- If there is a disagreement in your family about which programme to watch, who in your family do you *turn up/to* for support?



13 In pairs, use the questionnaire to interview your partner.

QUOTE...UNQUOTE

"People come and ask for autographs, but they don't bug you."

John Lennon, the day before he was shot by a fan.



3 The Advertising Game

LANGUAGE FOCUS



Reading

Before you start

1 Can you think of some advertisements you have seen? List some places where you have seen advertising.

2 Which advertisements have you seen recently that you liked? What did you like about them?

Read to learn

3 Read the text and answer the following questions.

- 1 When does the simplest type of advertisement work?
- 2 Why are modern techniques of design not enough for advertisements to be noticed in modern cities?
- 3 What ideas do today's advertisers use to make you notice their products?
- 4 What has the government done during the last decade?

Voice your opinion

4 Do you think advertising actually works? Have you ever bought anything because you liked the idea promoted in the advertisement?

The classic advertisement is one that gives information about finding certain products. It is likely to be just the name of a company, part of which may be a general location. For example, it could be "Shanghai Sewing Machine", or "Tsing Tao Beer Corporation", and you would know what the companies sell, where they are located, and the brand names.

However, this kind of advertising might not be suitable when there are products and services in direct competition with each other in the market place. In such situations, advertisements need to attract, and hold the attention of the public. Some advertisements consist of pictures or the words of experts to show people how good the products are. Others try to create advertisements that people simply enjoy looking at. As present-day advertisers often have large budgets, a lot of money is spent on applying modern techniques of design to make these advertisements as visually attractive as possible.

However, even this is often not enough to be noticed in a modern city. Because of the advertising boom, people are used to seeing high standards of visual design. Modern advertisements must stand out in a world full of competition by combining the highest standards of design with ideas linked to the products to make them more attractive. For example, some advertisements may suggest that buying a car can make you free. That is, they use the concept of freedom to sell the car. Other common ideas include happiness, wealth and success. In fact, in the world of advertisements, such content is as old as advertising itself.

For many of today's advertisers, repeating old ideas is not a successful approach. They realise that it does not matter how attractive the idea linked with the product is – most people know that the main purpose of the advertisement is making customers spend money. Instead, these advertisers look for other ways to make people notice their products. The top advertisers of today believe that using humour as well as new and unusual ideas to surprise people is important in modern advertisements. Their aim is to create something that has never been seen before and is fascinating for people to look at. By doing this, they hope to make people forget that someone is trying to sell them something!

However, not all advertising is about selling products and services for a profit. Some contemporary advertisements mainly aim to make contributions to society. There are public advertisements which encourage citizens to participate in improving their neighbourhood, protecting the environment, and helping other people. Over the last decade, the government has worked hard at using advertisements to educate the public on fighting AIDS, saving water, helping the poor, giving up smoking, etc. These advertisements have helped to increase public knowledge, which has made our society a better place for everyone.

Vocabulary

5 Find these words in the text and match them with the most suitable definitions.

approach, boom, budget, classic, concept, consist of, contemporary, corporation, neighbourhood, suitable

- traditional, typical
- company
- right for something
- contain
- plan of how money should be spent
- rapid increase
- idea
- method
- belonging to the present time
- area around where you live

Grammar

GERUNDS

6 Read the following sentences from the text and underline the Gerunds. Then in pairs, work out the answers to the questions.

- For example, it could be "Shanghai Sewing Machine", ...
- For many of today's advertisers, repeating old ideas is not a successful approach.
- ... a lot of money is spent on applying modern techniques of design to make these advertisements as visually attractive as possible.
- Others try to create advertisements that people simply enjoy looking at.

Which of the Gerunds is used:

- as a subject?
- after a verb?
- after a preposition?
- telling the use of a noun?

7 Read through the text again. In pairs, underline the Gerunds and discuss their functions.

Example ... the one that gives information about finding certain products. (after a preposition)

➡ Grammar Summary 6, on page 93.

8 Complete the sentences with the verbs in their correct form.

- I'm an early bird, and I've got used to _____ (get up) at 5:00 a.m.
- There is only one programme worth _____ (watch) today — the science programme on volcanoes.
- It's no use _____ (worry) about it. You can't do anything to change it.
- I regretted _____ (not apologise) to the old man for my bad behaviour.
- My little niece and nephew are always excited to set out on a _____ (camp) trip.
- For fifty years, she did her job without _____ (complain).
- _____ (Ask) about other people's personal business is not polite.
- I feel like _____ (not do) anything at all this evening.

9 Rewrite the following sentences using the Gerunds.

Example *Watching too much TV is bad for you.*

- It's bad for you to watch too much TV.
- Mary collects stamps. That's her hobby.
- He suggested that we should ask the boss for his opinion first.
- He rushed to the school. He didn't have breakfast.
- Don't talk to her. It's no use. She never listens.

10 Fill in the gaps with the words in the box. Use the correct form of the verbs.

ask, become, help, win, create, show, believe, be

Many advertisers dream of (1) _____ successful, but some people may (2) _____, "Who are the advertisers making their advertisements for? Are they making advertisements to (3) _____ sell more products? Or are they making advertisements for the purpose of (4) _____ awards?"

Some clever advertisements do not even (5) _____ the products they are advertising, but many advertisers (6) _____ that (7) _____ excellent advertisements is good for the companies as well. "If the advertisement for a product (8) _____ interesting, the company that sells the product will be famous too," they say.

Language in Use

11 Work in groups of four. Choose one advertisement from a local newspaper or magazine and describe it. The following vocabulary may be useful.

idea, give information, design, creative, interesting, attractive, fascinating

Example *The idea for the advertisement is creative.*

4 What's in the Papers?

KILLS FOCUS

Reading

Before you start

1 What is often reported in the newspapers? Give some examples.

Read to learn

2 Read the newspaper articles and match them with the headlines.

- 1 Bad language on TV not OK for kids.
- 2 Mum finds her four girls.
- 3 Astronomers' amazing escape.

B

More than 30 astronomers on a sightseeing trip to the museum of science had an amazing escape, after their trolleybus crashed into a greengrocer's truck on Park Avenue.

The accident, which took place in Kingston, a town southwest of London, happened because of the fog. The 60-year-old driver of the truck did not know that he was parked in the way of the trolleybus. When the driver finally discovered the trolleybus coming towards him through the fog, he tried to move but his tyres got stuck in the muddy ground. At the last minute, he jumped out of the truck, hurting his ankle, before the trolleybus crashed into the truck, pushing it 20 yards. "I would have been killed if I'd stayed in the truck," he said afterwards.

A spokesman for the police said, "It's amazing that no one was badly hurt. When we arrived at the scene, we called an ambulance as we saw blood everywhere. We soon realised, however, that the blood was really strawberry juice! The greengrocer's truck had been carrying a load of fresh strawberries." He praised the bravery of the astronomers who were helped out of the windows of the trolleybus by firemen.

3 Read the three groups of Key Words below and match them with the three articles.

KEY WORDS

escape, crash, bravery, incident;
attitude, consideration, innocent;
cry with happiness, contact

A

According to a research published by Leeds University yesterday, people don't mind bad language on television as long as it is not used in programmes watched by children.

The study found there was "amazing agreement" about when bad language was serious and when it was not. Even a group of mothers agreed that a certain amount of bad language in the well-known film *Pulp Fiction* was "OK" because the dialogue and situation made it "funny". Some people said they found the use of drugs in the film more worrying than the bad language.

People were asked to comment on scenes from films like *Pulp Fiction*, TV series like Channel 4's *Brookside* and cartoons like *South Park*. Leeds University concluded that people made a distinction between bad language used in programmes for adults, and those meant for children.

Peter Moore, a writer at the BBC, said, "The result does not surprise us at all. We have always tried to keep bad language away from innocent ears and this is a very important consideration when deciding at what times of day certain programmes are shown." Susan Bold, director of programmes at ITV, said, "The report gives interesting information about attitudes to bad language on screen. But it doesn't mean that we can increase the amount of bad language used on television."

C

Mum Lillian Derbyshire is going to see her four daughters again — after a 31-year holiday!

Shonda (now 38), Shelley (37), Sherri (36) and Shirin (34) went on holiday to America with Lillian's ex-husband — and never came back. Sherri wrote a letter to a local paper asking her mother to contact her.

Now Lillian, of West Gorton, Manchester, is making the 3,000-mile journey to California to see her daughters. 'I can't stop crying with happiness,' she said.



4 Read the articles again and answer these questions.

- 1 How old were Lillian's children when she last saw them?
- 2 Why did some people find bad language "OK" in films?
- 3 Why was the truck driver lucky to escape?

READING STRATEGIES:

Dealing with cultural references

- Look out for names and expressions related to British or American culture.
- Use the context to guess what the names represent, or what the expressions mean.
- If there is not enough information to guess, use an atlas, dictionary or encyclopaedia.

5 Find examples of names of these things in the texts.

- a) TV channels b) a TV series c) towns and villages
d) cities e) districts of cities f) a main road
g) a play h) an organisation

Example *West Gorton = a district of a city*

6 Use the Reading Strategies above to answer these questions about the texts.

- 1 How far is 20 yards? (text B)
a) 18 metres b) 7 metres c) 12 metres
- 2 What does BBC stand for? (text A)
a) British Boxing Club
b) British Broadcasting Corporation
c) Black Bulls Company
- 3 How far is 3,000 miles? (text C)
a) 3,000 km b) 4,800 km c) 6,000 km

Vocabulary:

Compound Adjectives

7 Sometimes you can join words with a hyphen to make an adjective. Find phrases with compound adjectives in the texts which mean the following:

- 1 a famous film (text A)
- 2 a driver of 60 years old (text B)
- 3 a very long holiday (text C)
- 4 a journey of 3,000 miles (text C)

Notice how words after numbers are singular.

Example *a 31-year holiday (not 31-years holiday)*

8 Rewrite these sentences using compound adjectives.

Example 1 = *We went on a two-week holiday.*

- 1 We went on a holiday for two weeks.
- 2 He broke the record for the 10,000-metre race.
- 3 She went for a walk early in the morning.
- 4 I saw a film about a man who is 120 years old.

Writing and Speaking

9 Imagine you work for a local newspaper. Write notes about real or imaginary news stories. Choose one of these areas:

entertainment (e.g. a concert), sports (e.g. a local match), personal (e.g. a local girl won a national chess competition), good news (e.g. a new hospital opened), bad news (e.g. an accident)

Example

What? 24-hour concert

Who? local group – the Plastic Roses

When? next Tuesday

Where? the district centre

Why? to raise money for charity

Comment: brilliant idea

10 In pairs, find out about your partner's news story.



Comparing Cultures

Most of the daily newspapers people read in Britain are national papers. However, in the US, the most popular newspapers are local papers. What national and local newspapers do you read?

QUOTE...UNQUOTE

"It was long ago in my life, as a simple reporter, that I decided that facts must never get in the way of truth."

James Cameron, British journalist



Communication Workshop

Writing: A Formal Letter to a Newspaper

Before you start

- 1 Match the parts of the letter (1–5) with the following:

suggestions for action, ending, character of town, reason for writing, health

- 2 Look at the highlighted linking words in the text. Which of them are used to contrast ideas?

- 3 Match informal expressions with the examples of formal style in the letter.

Example a = 9th January, 2004

- Tuesday
- Hi Sue!
- But I think it's going to ruin the place.
- Whatever they say, it's not going to be good for our health, is it?
- Write soon.
- Lots of love,
- Sam

Write a letter to your local newspaper giving your opinion about a local problem. Follow the stages below.

Stage 1

Choose a problem from the list that is important for you.

environment

- plans for a new road/airport/factory
- existing problem – traffic/factories/power station/pollution

young people

- the need for more sports stadiums/things to do
- unemployment/job opportunities/training courses

local needs

- new road/hospital/school/bus route
- action against crime/drugs/violence

Stage 2

Write notes about the problem and possible action to be taken.

28 Wexford Grove,
Tamford.

9th January, 2004

Tamford Evening News,
12 Main Street,
Tamford.

Dear Editor,

- I am writing to protest about the plan for a new airport. Many people have been against the idea from the start. **However**, the government is planning to go ahead with the building next year.
- First**, the government says that the airport will bring us industry and jobs. **However**, in my opinion, it will ruin the character of Tamford, a historic, country town. **Although** the airport would bring tourists, I am not sure they would want to stay in a dirty, industrial town.
- No matter** what the government says, it is clear that the airport will **also** affect our health. Problems will increase even though the government has promised us a new hospital. Air pollution will get worse and this will be harmful to people, **for example**, it can cause cancer. Noise pollution will **also** have an effect on the houses and schools near the airport.
- I think other people should write to the government about this problem. We should do everything we can to stop this airport.
- I look forward to reading more letters about this matter in your newspaper.

Yours faithfully,

Steve MORGAN

Mr Steve Morgan



Stage 3

Now plan paragraphs for your letter.

➡ *Writing Help 2 (layout), page 90.*

- reasons for writing
- 2–3 details of the problem
- 4 suggestions for action

Stage 4

Use your plan to write the letter.

➡ *Writing Help 2 (useful vocabulary/linking).*

Stage 5

Check your letter.

➡ *Writing Help 2 (checking).*

Talkback

In groups, read each other's letters. Give your opinion about the local issues in the letters.



Listening

Listen to the song *Candle In The Wind* and answer the questions.

- 1 Did the singer ever meet Norma Jean (Marilyn Monroe)? Why or why not?
- 2 How does the singer feel about her?
- 3 Why was she a “candle in the wind”?

Speaking: A Discussion

Before you start

- 1 Listen to Phil and Liz discussing advertisements. Which of them interrupts the other rudely?
- 2 What do Phil and Liz think of the picture of the mother and the girl? Who do you agree, Phil or Liz?
- 3 Which of the expressions in the Function File are polite and which are not?

Function File

Interrupting people

Can I say something?
 Can I interrupt a moment?
 Rubbish!
 You're wrong.
 I'd just like to say ...
 No way!

Discuss advertisements and advertising. Follow the stages below.

Stage 1

Work on your own. Look at the ads on this page. Write notes about your reactions. Use the Key Words to help you.

KEY WORDS

amusing, attractive, awful, boring, brilliant, clever, colourful, foolish, funny, serious, shocking, silly, successful, terrible, unusual



Example

Advertisement for Mother's Day – good idea; make you look at it and think; attractive – show how children love their mothers.

Stage 2

Read the Strategies. Then, in pairs, discuss the magazine advertisements and advertising in general.

SPEAKING STRATEGIES: Interacting in discussions

- Don't try to control the discussion. Listen to what the other person says.
- When you want to say something, wait for the other person to pause.
- If you have to interrupt, use the polite expressions above.
- Involve the other person, asking his/her opinions (e.g. What do you think about ...?)

Talkback

Tell the class which advertisement you like most and why, and give one of your own opinions about advertising.

Example We liked the ad of shoes. We think ads should be direct. We don't like the ones that try to shock.

Culture Corner

British Newspapers

In Britain, the national newspapers are very important. There are some very good local newspapers but most people read one of the main national newspapers.

The most popular newspapers are the “tabloids”. They usually have lots of big pictures and the articles are not very long. Tabloid papers do not have many serious articles, but they contain lots of stories about sex scandals, famous people and the royal family. They also have big sports sections and a lot of information about TV programmes.

The two best-selling tabloid newspapers are *The Sun* and *The Mirror*. They sell around four or five million copies a day. Another tabloid is *The Daily Mail*, which is more serious than the other two tabloids. There are four main “quality” papers. They are much bigger and wider than the tabloids and they also have longer and more serious news articles with fewer pictures. Quality newspapers have fewer readers.

The oldest and most famous quality newspaper is *The Times*, but the best selling ones nowadays, are *The Telegraph* and *The Guardian*. Finally, there is *The Financial Times*, a pink business newspaper

which is now the most important international business newspaper.

The two types of newspapers are an interesting part of British culture. The “quality” papers are large and inconvenient to read.

For many years, people have been wondering why they refuse to change their size.

However, many other people like the size of the “quality” papers

because it shows that they are not reading a tabloid, and are therefore reading a serious paper.



Recently, things seem to be changing. The first quality paper that started producing a tabloid format was *The Independent*, and quite soon after that, *The Times* produced a tabloid version too. Feedback on such changes is varied. For some people, this is not popular because they want their serious paper to look like a serious paper. For others, it is good to have a newspaper that is interesting, intelligent and also convenient to read.

Notes:

- tabloid /'tæblɔɪd/ n. 小报
- scandal /'skændl/ n. 丑行, 丑闻
- royal /'rɔɪəl/ adj. 王室的, 皇家的
- section /'sekʃən/ n. 部分, 片断
- quality papers (内容较严肃的) 大报
- inconvenient /,ɪnkən'vi:niənt/ adj. 不方便的
- independent /,ɪndɪ'pendənt/ adj. 独立自主的
- version /'vɜ:ʃən/ n. 版本; 译本
- feedback /'fi:dbæk/ n. 反馈

1 Read the text quickly and list the eight British newspapers mentioned.

2 Read the text again and answer the following questions.

- 1 How many copies of *The Sun* and *The Mirror* are sold every day?
- 2 How are quality papers thought to be different from the tabloids?
- 3 Why do many people like the bigger size of the quality papers?
- 4 Which serious newspaper first tried the tabloid size?
- 5 Why do some people like having a quality newspaper that has the tabloid size?

Bulletin Board

The class is collecting news for the news page. Read the notice and the two pieces of news. Then add your news to the board.

Class News

Hi, everybody!
Would any of you like to be reporters for our news page? Simply post your reports on this bulletin board! We want to hear all about the latest events and happenings in our school.

A New Champion

Our school's annual sports day took place yesterday in 30-degree heat. Our best runner, Li Yutan, who had been the champion for the last two years, won second place in the 800-metre race. Li was happy with his time, but he was not satisfied with his placing and said that the heat had got to him. He said he would try to win again next year. The new champion, Liu Yang, was very pleased with his success and said he owed it all to his running coach from Yu Wen Junior High School. Liu came first by two seconds, breaking the record set by Li last year. Next year is going to be an interesting race! Who will come out on top, I wonder?

Bon Voyage

Our English teacher, Mr Lewis, has sadly finished his two years at our school and is leaving our city next month. Mr Lewis is an excellent teacher and we will never forget his amusing stories and entertaining classes. Many of us have been lucky enough to be one of his students and we have all experienced his kindness and friendly assistance. We thank him for all his hard work and wish him a pleasant journey home. We will miss you, Mr Lewis!





Unit Diary

1 My favourite lesson(s) in this unit is/are _____.

Lesson 1 World News

Lesson 2 The Paparazzi

Lesson 3 The Advertising Game

Lesson 4 What's in the Papers?

2 In this unit, I've learned _____.

about the media, paparazzi and advertising

about newspapers and other media

how to make use of the media

the good and bad effects of media

3 I've learned _____ in this unit.

to listen for specific information

to interrupt people in discussion politely

to show agreement and disagreement

to write a formal letter to a newspaper

about compound words

about word stress in pronunciation

4 I have _____ difficulty with the Passive.

great

some

a little

no

I have _____ difficulty with the Gerund.

great

some

a little

no

5 The new words I've learned and remembered in this unit are:

6 The new words I still have difficulty spelling and remembering are:

7 I always get news from the following media, because they are _____

newspaper

radio

TV

Internet

magazine

other _____

8 I find the following ways of learning helpful:

guessing answers

listening for words from questions or their synonyms

concentrating on important words

noting cultural references in reading

using dictionaries and encyclopaedia for information

9 I feel _____ with my progress.

very satisfied

satisfied

a little satisfied

not satisfied at all

10 I need to put great efforts in the following areas _____.

studying grammar

vocabulary building

reading and listening strategies

learning strategies

working with others

pronunciation and intonation

others _____

My plan for the next unit is:

I need to _____



New York, USA

12 Culture Shock

In this unit you will...

- Read a letter; magazine pages and what people say on a radio show.
- Talk about different cultures and manners and do roleplays.
- Listen to different accents, an interview and some dialogues.
- Write an informal letter.
- Learn about verbs followed by *-ing* form or infinitives and Present Participles.



Oxfordshire, England

Warm-up

1 Which of the Key Words in the box do you associate with the countries in the photos? Check your answers with your teacher.

KEY WORDS

Food: barbecues, fish and chips, hamburgers, hot dogs, kangaroo, steaks, roast beef

Places: Big Ben, World Trade Centre, Hollywood, the River Thames, the Statue of Liberty, Sydney Opera House, the Great Barrier Reef

Sport: American football, baseball, basketball, football (soccer), surfing, windsurfing

2 Listen to three people talking. Which country are they from?

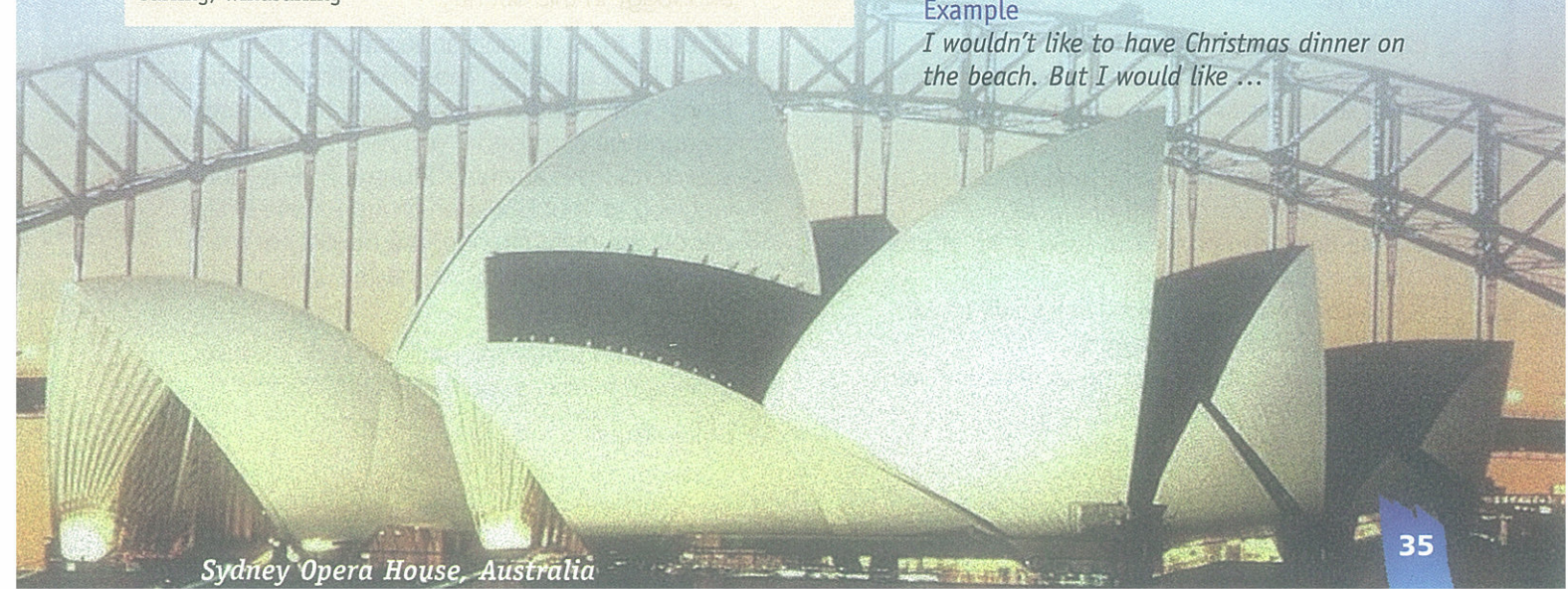
3 Listen to the people again and make notes about these things:

- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| a) the weather | c) free time |
| b) the food | d) holidays |

4 Which things are very different from where you live? Which things would you like or dislike?

Example

I wouldn't like to have Christmas dinner on the beach. But I would like ...



Sydney Opera House, Australia



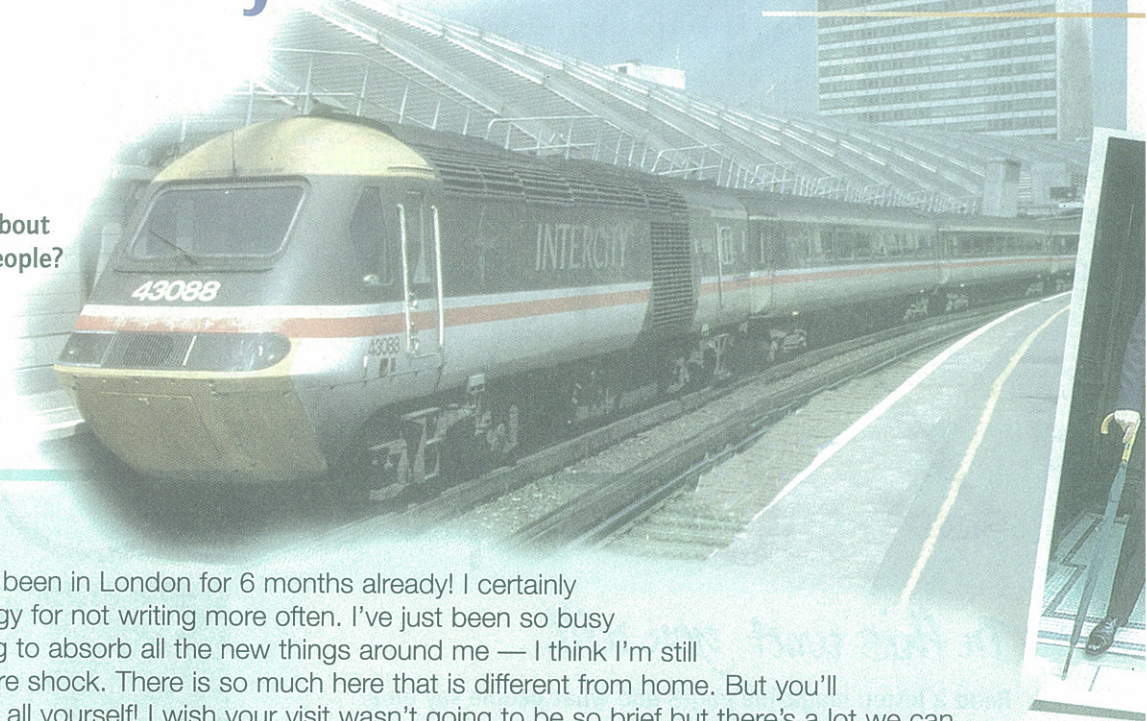
I Visiting Britain

Reading

Before you start

1 What do you know about Britain and the British people? Talk about the following things:

food, tipping, money, accommodation, humour



Dear Aunt Mei,

I can't believe I've been in London for 6 months already! I certainly owe you an apology for not writing more often. I've just been so busy studying and trying to absorb all the new things around me — I think I'm still experiencing culture shock. There is so much here that is different from home. But you'll soon experience it all yourself! I wish your visit wasn't going to be so brief but there's a lot we can do and see in a week. I'm just so glad you can afford to visit me and I refuse to let you pay for anything while you're here!

I don't know what your expectations are of London, but knowing that you've never travelled outside of Asia, I thought I'd tell you a bit about what you can expect to find.

10 First of all, the food. When I first got here, I was amazed to find that London is such an international city. There are people from all over the world living here and as a result, there are many international restaurants. Do you know that almost every town in Britain has at least one Chinese restaurant? But British people hardly ever eat Chinese food for breakfast. You're going to have to get used to bacon and eggs with a few slices of toast for breakfast over here, Aunt Mei!

15 And a word of advice. To avoid getting confused about the British tipping system, you need to check your bill to see if a tip is included or not. If it isn't, I suggest leaving 10% of the bill for the waiter or waitress — even a bit more if the service is good. Talking of money — it's really easy to exchange traveller's cheques at banks or hotels so I advise you to get some of those before you come.

I think we should consider staying in the English countryside for a few nights as I know you enjoy hiking. We can wander through the fields and even pick a few mushrooms to have with our breakfast! I have learnt which ones are tasty and safe to eat so we won't risk getting sick! And don't forget a warm coat! It can get pretty cold and foggy in this country.

One last thing, I didn't understand British humour at all when I first got here. The British find the strangest things funny! We're certainly more used to Chinese humour so don't be surprised if you hear laughter when you don't think anything's funny. They're not laughing at you! But even though some British people are quite strange, the majority of them are really friendly and I've made some good friends.

Anyhow, I'd better get back to work. I am so looking forward to your visit, Aunt Mei!

Love Xiaojin

Read to learn

2 Xiaojin is studying in London for six months. Read her letter to her aunt and decide if the sentences below are true (T) or false (F).

- 1 You can only eat English food in London.
- 2 Aunt Mei is visiting for one week.
- 3 You don't always need to leave a tip after a meal in a restaurant.
- 4 Some British mushrooms aren't safe to eat.
- 5 British people never laugh.
- 6 There are many Chinese restaurants in Britain.
- 7 Most British people are friendly.
- 8 It is always foggy in London.



Grammar

VERBS FOLLOWED BY -ing FORM OR INFINITIVE

3 Look at the blue verbs in the text and classify the verbs below into the correct columns.

expect, risk, refuse, avoid, advise, suggest, need, enjoy, consider, afford

verbs + infinitive	verbs + -ing form
--------------------	-------------------

Grammar Summary 7, page 93.

4 Write the verbs in brackets in their correct form. Use a dictionary to help you.

If you are planning (1) _____ (come) to Poland as a tourist, you will have plenty of interesting places to choose from. People who enjoy (2) _____ (hike) should consider (3) _____ (go) to the mountains, in the south of Poland. You don't have to book accommodation in advance as you will certainly manage (4) _____ (find) a local person who will offer (5) _____ (put) you up at a very reasonable price.

If you love (6) _____ (sail) and you don't mind (7) _____ (be) bitten by mosquitoes, you can go to the lakes in the northeast. You can either choose (8) _____ (stay) on a boat or go camping and practise (9) _____ (cook) on an open fire next to a lake.

The coast in Poland is cold but it's beautiful. If you can't stand (10) _____ (stay) in a crowded seaside town or can't afford (11) _____ (pay) for a big hotel, arrange (12) _____ (stay) in one of the many small coastal villages. You certainly won't risk (13) _____ (meet) too many people if you decide (14) _____ (go) for a long walk along the beach.

5 Tick the possible answers. There may be more than one correct answer.

- We discussed it for a long time and in the end he _____ to go to the festival.
a) agreed b) offered c) gave up
- When I _____ going to the cinema he said he preferred the theatre.
a) asked b) refused c) suggested
- If you live abroad for some time you _____ losing old friends in your homeland.
a) risk b) put off c) fail
- It wasn't easy but we _____ to get an interview with the Queen.
a) gave up b) managed c) failed
- I think you should _____ studying medicine. You would make an excellent physician.
a) decide b) consider c) agree
- The theatre was so small that they _____ to let in any more people.
a) stopped b) refused c) gave up

6 Use six of the verbs below to describe some of the things that happened to you this week. Use a dictionary if you need to check the verb pattern.

Example *Yesterday, I just avoided having an accident on my bicycle.*

avoid, afford, manage, admit, promise, consider, learn, plan, practise, decide, put off, fail, risk, suggest, agree, offer, give up, refuse

Language in Use

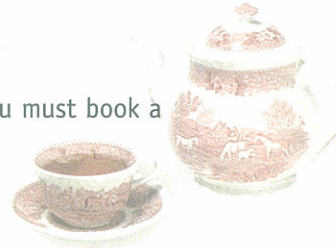
7 Work in groups and write advice for a foreigner visiting Beijing. Use the following words and the verbs in this lesson to help you.

weather, accommodation, differences, eating out, money, telephones, travel

Example

Please *avoid coming* here in winter. It's cold.

If you *decide to stay* in a hotel, you must book a hotel room in advance.



Quote ... Unquote

"Modern man is educated to understand foreign languages and misunderstand foreigners."

G.K. Chesterton, English writer (1874-1936)





2 Mind Your Manners

Listening

Before you start

1 Use the scale to classify people from these cultures.

Italy, Japan, Britain, the United States



Listen to learn

2 Listen to Part 1 of the interview about communication in different cultures. Compare what the expert says with your answers from Exercise 1.

3 Listen to Part 2 of the interview and complete the table.

✓ = yes, often; ✗ = not so often or never

Typical behaviour	Italians	British	Japanese	Americans
show anger in serious situations	✓	✗	✗	✓
use a lot of hand movements				
look directly at people				
interrupt/speak at the same time				
say "please" and "thank you" a lot				

How would you complete the table for Chinese people?

4 Listen and match the pictures with the dialogues.



5 Listen to the dialogues and complete the Function File.

Function File

Being Polite

Dialogue 1: Formal

Christina: Excuse me? Could you pass the lemon and salt, (1) _____ ?

Man: Yes, certainly.

Christina: (2) _____ .

Man: You're (3) _____ .

Dialogue 2: Informal

Boy: So, what do you think we should do this weekend? What about going canoeing again?

Girl: Yeah, last time we went it was great! Or we could take our flashlights and explore that cave.

Christina: Er, I'd (4) _____ not, thanks. I'd rather stay cosy and read my novel.

Girl: All right. Or how about going to the circus?

Dialogue 3: Formal

Christina: (5) _____, Mrs Davis? Do you think I (6) _____ speak to you?

Mrs Davis: Yes, dear.

Christina: Would you (7) _____ giving me and my schoolmate a lift to school? We need to see the headmaster.

Mrs Davis: Of course not. In about ten minutes, OK? We can go in the jeep.

Christina: Thanks a lot. That's very (8) _____ of you.

Mrs Davis: It's no (9) _____. Any time.

Dialogue 4: Informal

Boy: Hi, Christina. Have you got the blankets and sheets you borrowed?

Christina: Oh, I've forgotten them! I'm (10) _____ .

Boy: That's OK. Bring them tomorrow. I need them for our camping trip.

Christina: Yes, I will, I (11) _____ !





Speaking

SPEAKING STRATEGIES: Preparation for speaking

- Decide how formal or informal the situation is.
- Decide which roles you are going to play.
- Choose some suitable expressions from the Function File, e.g. *I'd rather not, thanks.*
- Practise saying expressions with polite intonation.

8 Now, in pairs, prepare for these roleplays.

- 1 Ask a stranger to close a window on a train.
- 2 Decide with a friend what to do at the weekend.
- 3 Ask a neighbour to post a parcel for you.
- 4 Ask a friend to return a handkerchief he/she borrowed.
- 5 Decide where to go on holiday with a friend.
- 6 Ask a waiter to give you the menu.

Act out the situations.

Vocabulary: Phrasal Verbs

9 Complete the verbs in the dialogue below with these words:

up with, on, back, off, up (x2)



Pete: Hey, *Anne*? Are you going to *the canteen*?

Anne: Well, I'm going (1) _____ *home*. I'm in a bit of a hurry.

Pete: Do you think you could drop me (2) _____ *at the mailbox*?

Anne: OK, but hurry (3) _____. I've got to pick (4) _____ *my twin sisters in twenty minutes*.

Pete: Great! Hang (5) _____ a second. I'll just get *my bag*.

Anne: I'm going to the *courtyard*. Catch (6) _____ me there!

Now listen to the dialogue and check your answers.

10 In pairs, practise the dialogue from Exercise 9. Change the information in *italics*.

Pronunciation: Intonation

6 Make a list of the expressions in the Function File we use:

- a) to ask for something politely
- b) to reply to someone's thanks
- c) to politely refuse an invitation
- d) to make a request to someone you don't know very well
- e) to thank someone for doing something for you
- f) to apologise to a friend

Listen and repeat the expressions.

7 Listen to the dialogues again. This time Christina sounds rude. Why?

Example Dialogue 1 = b

- a) she is too direct
- b) she doesn't say "please" or "thank you"
- c) she shows no interest
- d) she interrupts someone

Comparing Cultures

How would you describe British people?

- 1 Are they open?
- 2 Do they say *please* and *thank you* a lot?
- 3 Is formal language very different from informal language?



3 Living Abroad

Reading

Before you start

1 In pairs, write five things you think the USA is most famous for. Then write five things you think China is most famous for.

Read to learn

2 Read the texts and decide if these sentences are true (T), false (F) or with no information provided (NI).

- Jin Li found the American way of life familiar soon after her arrival in the USA.
- We know Jin Li has at least one American friend.
- Wang Lei never went back to the restaurant in New York again.
- Martin stayed in China with a local family.
- Tom couldn't understand why his friend's grandfather wanted to go with him to the bus station.
- Tina was a friend of the tourist guide.

When I first arrived in San Francisco, I had a difficult time understanding certain aspects of the American way of doing things. Once I went to visit an American friend. After a splendid evening, I finished my cocoa and got ready to leave. As soon as we said goodbye, my friend went back to his room closing the door behind him. It made me feel that I was not really welcome.

Jin Li

I've always been outgoing but since an embarrassing experience in a New York restaurant I've been much more cautious. I was enjoying my dessert and talking to my American friend Janice at the table when I noticed people staring at us. I asked Janice what was wrong and she told me that I was talking too loudly. She said that to some American people, it sounded like I was shouting. I whispered for the rest of the evening.

Wang Lei



What did I learn about Chinese customs from my exciting exchange to China? Well, the Chinese are extremely welcoming. One evening, I was invited to a Chinese family dinner. I had a good appetite and the food was yummy. But my host kept on putting more food in my rice bowl. They didn't seem to hear me saying "No, thank you" in my poor spoken Chinese. This was a very special experience I had in China. In my culture, you don't get more food if you don't ask for more.

Martin

I had a similar experience the last time I visited China. The Chinese are the friendliest people I have ever met. After my visit to a Chinese family, my friend's grandfather wouldn't let me go to the bus station alone. He insisted on walking me to the station to see me off. I kept saying that I knew the way myself, but it just did not work. What he did was amazing. This will not happen in many other cultures, I guess.

Tom

Chinese people are very modest too. Last time, when I visited China, we saw the tour guide wearing a very pretty fur coat on the day we left. I told her the coat suited her, but she looked very embarrassed, saying that it was a cheap one she had bought a long time ago. I was surprised. In my culture, when people say nice things about us, we feel very happy and say thanks.

Tina

Voice your opinion

3 What do you think is the most interesting to you when you visit a city for the first time, its people, its food or its architecture?

Vocabulary

4 Find the words in the texts which mean the following.

- 1 liking to meet and talk to new people
- 2 a desire for food
- 3 speak very quietly
- 4 part
- 5 careful
- 6 tasty
- 7 excellent
- 8 look at something for a long time without moving your eyes

Grammar

PRESENT PARTICIPLES

5 Read the sentences from the second text. Underline the Present Participles and then in pairs, work out the answers to the questions.

- 1 What did I learn about Chinese customs from my exciting exchange to China?
- 2 Last time, when I visited China, we saw the tour guide wearing a very pretty fur coat on the day we left.
- 3 I told her the coat suited her, but she looked very embarrassed, saying that it was a cheap one ...
- 4 What he did was amazing.

Which of the Present Participles is used:

- a) to describe a noun
- b) to express features of the subject
- c) to add information to an object
- d) to describe two actions that happen at the same time

6 Read through the texts again. Underline more examples in the texts and in pairs, discuss their function.

➔ Grammar Summary 8, on page 94.

7 Fill in the gaps with the correct form of the words in brackets.

Hong Jin arrived at the University of Leeds on 20 January. It was (1) _____ (freeze) cold. (2) _____ (turn) on the tap in his flat, Hong Jin found that there was no (3) _____ (run) water. He called the landlord, (4) _____ (ask) what was wrong. The landlord said, "Oh dear, the pipes have frozen!"

8 Complete the sentences by using the words in brackets in the correct form.

- 1 a) His performance _____ me. (amaze)
b) He gave an _____ performance.
- 2 a) My friend went home and _____ me to conduct the band. (leave)
b) My friend went home, _____ me to conduct the band.
- 3 a) The burglar _____ the house and Nancy saw him. (break into)
b) Nancy saw the burglar _____ the house.
- 4 a) The dog always _____ when I pass by the house. (bark)
b) I always hear the dog _____ when I pass by the house.
- 5 a) Parents _____ their children may get injured and they won't let them play in the street. (think)
b) _____ they may get injured, parents won't let their children play in the street.

9 Rewrite the following sentences, using Present Participles.

Example

{ If you think twice,
Thinking twice, you might change your mind.

- 1 As I know a lot of people need my help, I became an educator.
- 2 The volcano erupted and killed all the dinosaurs.
- 3 When the detective climbed out of the window, he waved to his partner who was waiting for him in his car.
- 4 To our great surprise, we found people were surviving the earthquake.

Language in Use

10 Work in pairs and imagine that you are going to visit a country. Try to find information on it and give a short presentation about what you need to do if you go there.

Example *In western countries, hosts and hostesses won't persuade a guest to eat more when he/she says, "I'm full." But in China, hosts and hostesses usually keep persuading the guest to eat more.*



4 The New Australians

Reading

Before you start

1 In pairs, write two questions about things you'd like to know about life in Australia.

Example *What sort of food do Australians eat?*

Read to learn

2 Read the radio show quickly. Did you find the answers to your questions from Exercise 1?

Is it all kangaroos and surfing?

George: Hi. Well, I live on an acre of land outside Melbourne but my family actually came here from Greece in the 1980s — in fact, Melbourne is the city with the largest number of Greek people outside Athens! At first, we didn't feel we belong here, but now we are attached to the land we live on.

Host: Thanks, George. Now here's Fiona from Sydney.

Fiona: Hello. Australia is my birthplace but my mum came from Scotland and my dad came from France. That's the great thing about Australian culture — it's such a mix of different cultures. The early settlers were mostly English and Irish, but since 1945, the population has become more and more mixed with people from Southern Europe and Asia.

Host: Wow! How do these different cultures affect different aspects of Australian culture?

Fiona: Well, for example, we see all these influences in modern Australian cooking. Chefs call it "fusion food" — a brilliant mixture of delicious Southern European food mixed with Southeast Asian food. The desserts are the best — they're so yummy!

Host: Sounds tasty!

George: And kangaroos are tasty too! In Melbourne, the only place we ever see kangaroos is on the menu in a restaurant. You mainly see kangaroos in the vast area of desert in the middle of Australia. This is a great place for camping but you have to look out for snakes and spiders — Australia has some of the most dangerous in the world.

Host: So do many people live in the desert?

George: Not really. There are people who work in the mines, of course. Australia actually exports the most diamonds and coal in the world! And there are also a lot of sheep farms in the desert areas — in fact, I've heard that there are seven sheep for every person. But

Host: Welcome to "Countries of the World". Today we're talking about Australia, the land of sunshine and surfing. George and Fiona are two Australians who have joined us for today's show. So first of all, tell us a bit about yourselves.

most Australians live on the coast. That's why surfing is such a popular sport.

Fiona: But it's not the only sport Australians are fond of. Because the weather's so good, Australians like being outdoors. Walking, fishing, horse-riding, tennis, golf and sailing are all popular. We take sport very seriously and have produced great Olympic swimmers and top cyclists.

Host: So is Australia all about beach barbecues and surfing? What about art and literature?

George: Contrary to popular belief, Australia is not a dull place at all for people wanting culture. There's a really lively cultural scene here. Australia has produced some famous painters and world-class writers.

Fiona: And in Sydney, you'll find a broad choice of opera, drama, classical concerts, rock concerts — there's too much choice really! Of course, things are more limited if you live in a small town.

Host: Now, is there anything you don't like about Australia?

Fiona: I can't bear the way the native Australians have been treated. They are now a minority group and most of them live in terrible conditions while the rest of us are quite well-off. I think that's unfair. The government is trying to improve things, but it seems a bit late. I wonder if they'll ever forgive the way they've been treated.

George: I agree with Fiona. The only other thing I'd complain about is the roads outside the cities. Most of them are in pretty poor condition.

Host: Well, you've given me a great preview of Australia. Now I need to see it myself!

Fiona: Of course! There are loads of great places to see in Australia. You have to visit the Great Barrier Reef — it's just amazing!

George: And the most interesting place of all is Ayers Rock — the huge red rock in the desert that changes colour at dusk.

Host: Are all Australians as proud of their country as you are?

Fiona and George: They are!



3 Read the radio show again. Say if these sentences are true (T), false (F) or we don't know because there is no information (NI).

- 1 Australia has large areas of desert.
- 2 Australia is a major producer of cars.
- 3 Surfing is the most popular sport.
- 4 Australian roads can be quite dangerous.
- 5 There are some dangerous animals in Australia.
- 6 Australia has never produced any important writers.
- 7 Many recent immigrants have come from Greece.
- 8 Native Australians form a large percentage of the population.
- 9 Most Native Australians live in the desert.
- 10 The standard of living in Australia is high.

4 Who do you think said these things: George or Fiona?

- 1 "Kangaroo meat is delicious."
- 2 "Australia is a multi-cultural society."
- 3 "Most Australians love to be out in the sunshine."
- 4 "Melbourne is the second largest Greek city."
- 5 "There's a fantastic choice of things to do in Sydney."
- 6 "Australian 'fusion food' is excellent."
- 7 "A lot of the roads are terrible."
- 8 "Ayers Rock is a famous sightseeing spot in Australia."

READING STRATEGIES: Identifying facts and opinions

- To identify opinions, look for adjectives that express positive or negative feelings, e.g. *Kangaroos are tasty too! It's unfair.*
- To identify facts, look for statements which are true and which do not depend on the opinion of the speaker, e.g. *Most Australians live on the coast.*

5 Are the sentences in Exercise 4 facts or opinions? Say why.

Example 1 is an opinion. George says it is delicious, but other people may not like it.

Now find more opinions and facts in the text.

6 Match the expressions from the text (1-7) with the definitions (a-g).

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1 Australia is my <i>birthplace</i> | a) like |
| 2 in the <i>vast</i> area of desert | b) opposite to |
| 3 Australians <i>are fond of</i> sport | c) not fair |
| 4 <i>contrary to</i> popular belief | d) have a good standard of living |
| 5 you'll find a <i>broad</i> choice | e) place where I was born |
| 6 the rest of us <i>are quite well-off</i> | f) wide |
| 7 I think that's <i>unfair</i> | g) huge |

Vocabulary: Connotations

7 Find the Key Words underlined in the text. Do they usually express positive or negative feelings?

KEY WORDS

tasty, popular, top, amazing, interesting, poor, dull, lively, limited, brilliant, delicious, well-off, unfair

8 Work in groups. Can you remember what George and Fiona said about these things? Take turns to say sentences using adjectives from Exercise 7.

Example

George said that kangaroos are really *tasty*.

George: kangaroo, surfing, location of Australia, places to visit, roads, Australian culture

Fiona: cultural mix, food, conditions of native Australians, sport, things to do in Sydney

Speaking

9 Work in pairs. Turn to page 91 and find out more about Australia.

QUOTE ... UNQUOTE

"To live in Australia permanently is like going to a party and dancing all night with one's mother."

Barry Humphries, Australian comedian

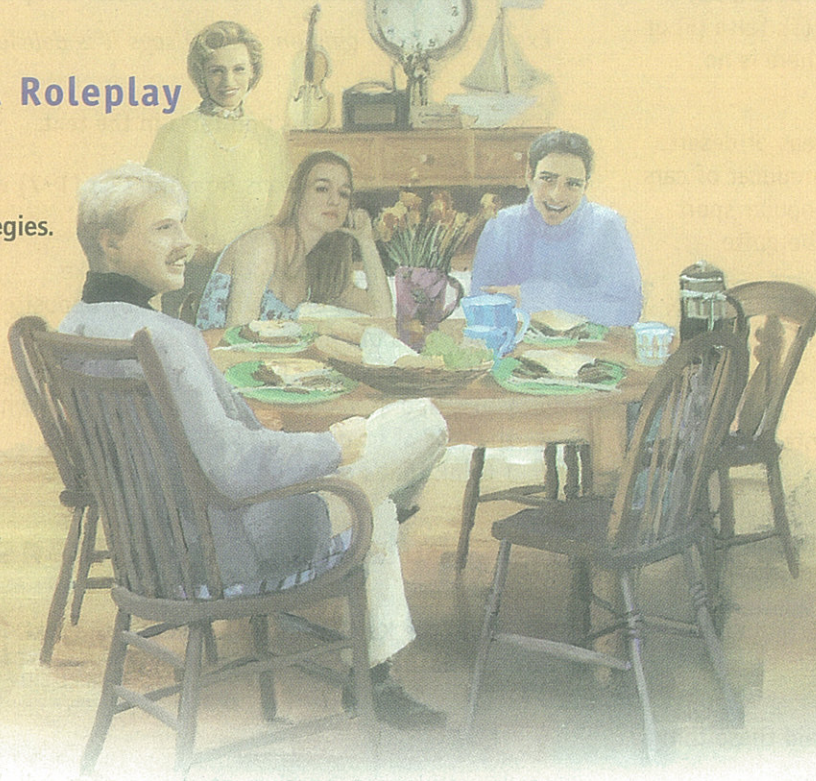


Communication Workshop

Speaking: A Roleplay

Before you start

- 1 Read the Strategies.



LISTENING STRATEGIES: Identifying style

- Informal style is more direct. Listen for contractions and colloquial or slang expressions, e.g. *yeah, sure, OK, thanks*.
- Formal style usually contains longer sentences and polite words and expressions, e.g. *would you mind, please, thank you*.

Now listen to four short dialogues. Which ones are formal and which are informal?

2 A foreign student is staying with a British family on an exchange visit. They are having dinner. Listen to the conversation and answer these questions.

- 1 What does the student ask for?
- 2 What favour does he ask?
- 3 Why does he apologise?
- 4 What does he want to do on Saturday night?

3 Listen again. On which two occasions does the student sound rude?

Imagine you are on an exchange visit to the UK. Have a conversation over dinner with one of the parents of your exchange partner. Follow the stages.

Stage 1

Prepare some things to say and practise saying them politely. The Key Words may help you.

- 1 you need something on the table – ask for it
- 2 you broke something earlier in the day – apologise
- 3 ask for a favour, e.g. a lift into town
- 4 you want to do something with your exchange partner at the weekend – ask for permission

KEY WORDS

Dinner table: garlic, pepper, salt, vinegar, lemon

Objects: an apron, ashtray, a cassette, a comb, a cup, a glass, a mirror, a plate, a radio, scissors, a vase

Favours: buy something for you, give you a lift, lend you some money, make a phone call

Weekend activities: go to a concert/a disco/a match/a party/the cinema, go shopping

Stage 2

In pairs, act out the situation. Your partner takes the part of the British parent.

Example Mrs Thompson, could you please pass me ...

When you have finished, change roles.

Talkback

Assess your partner for politeness.

very polite, quite polite, not very polite

Writing: An Informal Letter

Before you start

1 Read the letter. What kind of linking words are the underlined words?

addition, contrast, example, purpose, reason, time

2 Find three examples of informal linking words at the beginning of sentences.

Dear Sonia,
 How are you? Very well, I hope. I'm sure my dog remembers going for walks in the park with you – he barks when I say your name!
 Anyway, I'm writing because there's only a month to go before I come to visit you. Maybe you can give me some advice so that I'm fully prepared. First, what sort of present should I bring for your parents? I'd also like to buy you a CD. So can you help me out? I know you like Queen, but I don't know which records you've got. Finally, what sort of clothes shall I bring? Will we be going anywhere special such as a party? Shall I bring anything formal?
 Well, I have to go now as I've got to study for a maths exam. Please write back soon and let me know. I'm really looking forward to coming!
 Lots of love,
 Suzanne

Write a letter to an exchange partner, giving him/her advice about coming to your country. Follow the stages below.

Stage 1

Imagine the person you are writing to. Answer these questions:

- 1 Is your partner a boy or a girl?
- 2 What was your visit to Britain like when you stayed with him/her?
- 3 Did anything special happen? Did you have any problems?
- 4 What are your partner's interests?
- 5 Is there any useful advice you can give him/her about coming to your country?

Stage 2

Organise your notes into three paragraphs.

- 1 introduction (chat, questions)
- 2 reason for writing (give your advice)
- 3 an excuse to finish the letter

⇒ Writing Help 3 (layout), page 91.

Stage 3

Write your letter.

⇒ Writing Help 3 (useful vocabulary, linking).

Stage 4

Check your letter.

⇒ Writing Help 3 (checking).

Talkback

In groups, read each other's letters. Is there any advice that you don't agree with? Tell the others.

Listening

1 Read the song *Waltzing Matilda*. Match the definitions (a–g) with the Australian slang words in blue. Check your answers in a dictionary.

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------|
| a) travelling around | d) pond |
| looking for work | e) food bag |
| b) eucalyptus tree | f) sheep |
| c) a bush traveller | g) cooking pan |

2 Listen to the song and fill in the gaps.

Oh, there was once a **swagman** camped in a **billabong**,
 (1) _____ the shade of a **coolibar tree**.
 And he (2) _____ as he looked at his old **billy** boiling
 Who'll come a **waltzing Matilda** with me?

Chorus

Who'll come a waltzing Matilda my darling?
 Who'll come a waltzing Matilda with (3) _____?
 Waltzing Matilda and carrying a (4) _____ bag
 Who'll come a waltzing Matilda with me?

Down came a **jumbuck** to (5) _____ at the water hole

Up (6) _____ the swagman and grabbed him happily

And he sang as he put him away in his **tucker bag**.
 You'll come a waltzing Matilda with me.

Down came the landowner (7) _____ his horse
 Down came the (8) _____, one, two, three.
 Whose is that jumbuck you've got in that bag?

Up jumped the swagman and (9) _____ into the water hole

Drowning himself by the coolibar tree.

And his (10) _____ may be heard as it sings in the billabong.

Who'll come a waltzing Matilda with me?

Culture Corner

Australia

Aborigines – the Native Australians

A borigines probably came to Australia from Indonesia 50,000 years ago. The oldest bone found in Australia was at Lake Mungo in New South Wales. Scientists believe it is 38,000 years old and it carried some ceremonial paint.

Aborigines were nomads. Originally, they didn't have a sense of land ownership, although Aboriginal children were taught from an early age that they belonged to the land and must respect tribal boundaries. Tribes returned to particular places to bury their dead. Some places, like Uluru, were sacred because they were associated with the "Dreamtime", the time when the Earth was formed and cycles of life and nature began.

Aboriginal legends, songs and dances tell of powerful spirits who created the land and people during the Dreamtime. There was no written Aboriginal language and, in fact, most of the 600 tribes spoke different dialects and rarely met except on ceremonial occasions. The tradition of the Dreamtime, however, united the people. Rock paintings showing this creation period can be found all over the country. Some of the most spectacular and best preserved can be seen at rock galleries in Kakadu National Park and other parts of Northern Australia.

The arrival of white people gradually brought an end to the traditional Aboriginal way of life. The "new" Australians began to build and settle on Aborigine tribal lands. Today, most Aborigines live in cities and towns or in settlements near tribal lands. Few continue the old nomadic way of life.

In recent years, white Australians have become more sensitive to the Aborigines' situation. The result has been an increase in health and educational services, greater recognition of Aboriginal land rights and a growing appreciation of Aboriginal culture. Many museums now display Aboriginal art and craft as well as musical instruments.



Australia Factfile



Area:
7,686,850 sq km
Population:
18,600,000
Capital:
Canberra
Official language:
English
Currency:
Australian dollar

1 What do you know about Australian Aborigines? In pairs, decide if these statements are true (T) or false (F). Then read the text and check your answers.

- 1 They originally came from India.
- 2 They were farmers.
- 3 There is no written Aboriginal language.
- 4 Europeans destroyed their traditional way of life.
- 5 No Aboriginal art or artefacts survive.

2 Match the words from the text with the definitions (a–e).

- | | |
|--------------|--|
| 1 particular | a) a living thing without a physical body |
| 2 tribe | b) certain |
| 3 spirit | c) a place where works of art are shown |
| 4 gallery | d) an old well-known story |
| 5 legend | e) a group of people of the same race led by a chief |

Notes:

Aborigine /æbərɪdʒɪni/ *n.* 澳大利亚土著居民
nomad /nəʊməd/ *n.* 游牧部落的人
ownership /'əʊnəʃɪp/ *n.* 所有权
tribal /traɪbəl/ *adj.* 部落的, 种族的
boundary /'baʊndəri/ *n.* 边界

sacred /'seɪkrɪd/ *adj.* 神圣的
dialect /'daɪəlekt/ *n.* 方言
rarely /'reəli/ *adv.* 很少地
preserve /'prɪzɜ:v/ *vt.* 保存

Bulletin Board

Leon's friend is moving to China for a year. Read Leon's note and the two pieces of advice. Add your own suggestions to the bulletin board.

Help my friend!

Hello everyone,
My friend Martin is moving to China for a year and he needs information on living and working in Beijing. I don't know much about life in Beijing, so please can you help him by offering advice on the food, climate, clothes, transportation and places to visit?
Thank you all so much.
Leon

Hi Leon,
I would definitely suggest that your friend bring clothes for different seasons. In Beijing, the four seasons are all very distinct. Spring is dry and windy and summer is hot and rainy. Autumn is the best time of the year as the sky is blue, the air is crisp and the temperature is mild. However, winter is very cold and it sometimes snows.

As for food, he must definitely try Beijing Roast Duck as this is thought to be one of the most delicious dishes in the world! He must also try Hotpot – this is especially good on a cold winter's day. And Beijing is famous for its snacks. It is said that there are more than 200 different kinds!

Amy

Dear Leon,
Beijing has such a long and interesting history so my advice to your friend is that he should visit as many historical places as possible. For example, the Great Wall, the Forbidden City, the Temple of Heaven and the Ming Tombs are all fascinating places to visit. My second piece of advice is that he should buy a bicycle as soon as he can. Bikes are very useful and convenient for getting around Beijing as the traffic can sometimes be a problem during rush hours.
Liu



Unit Diary

- My favourite lesson(s) in this unit is/are _____.
 Lesson 1 Visiting Britain Lesson 2 Mind Your Manners
 Lesson 3 Living Abroad Lesson 4 The New Australians
- In this unit, I've learned _____.
 about different countries and cultures to talk about different cultures
 about culture shock to talk about my own culture
- I've learned _____ in this unit.
 about being polite about formal and informal styles
 about intonation changes about connotations of words
 about how to write an informal letter
- I have _____ difficulty with the grammar of this unit (verbs followed by *-ing* or Infinitive)
 great some a little no
- The three cultural differences between China and Britain are:
■ _____
■ _____
■ _____
- It is _____ (important not important) to know the cultural differences when living abroad, because _____.
- The new words I've learned and remembered in this unit are:
_____.
- The new words I still have difficulty spelling and remembering are:
_____.
- I find the following ways of learning helpful:
 practising saying expressions with polite intonation
 identifying facts and opinions in reading
 identifying styles
 using an atlas, encyclopaedia and the Internet for more information
 making friends with foreigners
- I feel _____ with my progress.
 very satisfied satisfied a little satisfied not satisfied at all
- I find I need to work harder in the following areas:
 listening reading speaking writing vocabulary grammar
 pronunciation and intonation translation communication strategies
 learning strategies confidence building working with others
 others _____

My plan for the next unit is:
I need to _____
_____.

Project

A survey

1 Work in groups of three to write and conduct a survey. Choose one of the following topics for your survey.

- a) Attitudes toward money
- b) Culture shock
- c) The influence of the media

2 Now follow the stages.

Stage 1

As a group, decide on the best target audience for your survey. Do you want to focus on young people, the elderly, students, foreign tourists etc.?

Stage 2

Meet as a group and talk about the topic you have chosen for your survey. Gather your ideas and write a list of potential questions for your survey. After making a long list, choose the best 20 questions for your survey.

Stage 3

Give your survey to a sample group. Your sample group should be as large as possible to get more accurate results. You may also want to explore various methods of conducting your survey. For example, by e-mail etc.

Stage 4

Study the results of your survey and present them to the class.



Survey Form

Read Only Mode
BOARDINGS ON CONGRESS
Find Record 1366

FALL 1997

Discard Survey
Serial Number 1366
Version English Spanish

Surveyor's Trip Log
Date/Time Sun 19 Oct 97 7:19 AM
Route 5 WOODROW
Code/Type LOCAL CMTA
Direction SOUTH

Deck ID 187
Surveyor LINDA WARNER
Begin Serial 1366
End Serial 1367

1. Where did you get on THIS BUS?
Nearest Corner CONGRESS AVE and 4TH ST

2. Where did you come from?
 Home Shopping School
 Work Medical Personal/Recreational
 College/University Other (specify)

3. What is the address OR nearest corner of the place you came from?
Address 88 SAN JACINTO BLVD
Nearest Corner SAN JACINTO BLVD and 1ST ST

4. What is the nearest landmark or building?
FOUR SEASONS HOTEL

5. How did you get to the BUS STOP?
 I transferred from Bus Route # How many blocks did you walk from that bus to this one? miles
 I rode with someone or was dropped off - we drove miles and parked
 I drove 50 blocks miles
 I walked
 I rode a bike
 Other (specify)

6. Where will you get off THIS BUS?
Nearest Corner RIVERSIDE DR and PLEASANT VALLEY RD

7. How will you get from THIS BUS to where you are going?
 I will transfer to Bus Route # How many blocks will I walk from that bus to this one? miles
 I will walk
 I will ride a bike
 I will drive
 I will take a taxi
 I will take a train
 I will take a bus
 I will take a subway
 I will take a streetcar
 I will take a trolley
 I will take a ferry
 I will take a cable car
 I will take a tram
 I will take a monorail
 I will take a light rail
 I will take a rapid transit
 I will take a commuter rail
 I will take a high speed rail
 I will take a bicycle
 I will take a motorcycle
 I will take a car
 I will take a truck
 I will take a van
 I will take a wheelchair
 I will take a stroller
 I will take a baby carriage
 I will take a pet carrier
 I will take a suitcase
 I will take a bag
 I will take a backpack
 I will take a briefcase
 I will take a folder
 I will take a portfolio
 I will take a suitcase
 I will take a bag
 I will take a backpack
 I will take a briefcase
 I will take a folder
 I will take a portfolio

Record: 14 of 1358 (Filtered)

Group Assessment

- 1 Are you satisfied with your preparation for the project? Yes No Why?
- 2 Are you satisfied with the methods that your group chose to conduct the survey? Yes No Why?
- 3 How will you improve your project work in the future?
- 4 What did you learn from other groups?

Literature Spot 4

The Pearl

BACKGROUND

John Steinbeck (1902–1968) was born in California. After university, he had several different jobs. He worked on farms looking after cattle or picking fruit. Many of Steinbeck's novels and stories were about the hard lives of farming families in California, like *Pastures of Heaven* (1932) and *Of Mice and Men* (1937). His most famous book, *The Grapes of Wrath* (1939), was about a poor, migrant family in the terrible period of economic depression of the 1930s. Other famous works include *Tortilla Flat* (1935), *Cannery Row* (1945) and *East of Eden* (1952). Many of Steinbeck's novels were later made into Hollywood films. Steinbeck was given the Nobel Prize for literature in 1962.

The Pearl is an old Mexican folk story which Steinbeck tells with his characteristic understanding and love of humanity.

Before you start

1 Read about John Steinbeck and answer these questions.

- 1 What kind of people did Steinbeck write about?
- 2 What experience did he have of their lives?
- 3 In what period did Steinbeck write a lot of his most famous novels?

2 The three animals below are important in the story. Match them with the definitions.

oyster, scorpion, coyote

- 1 a kind of wild dog
- 2 a small sea animal that lives in a shell and produces pearls
- 3 a creature like a large insect that has a poisonous sting

Reading and Listening

3  Read and listen to the story. Order the sentences below.

Example 1 h

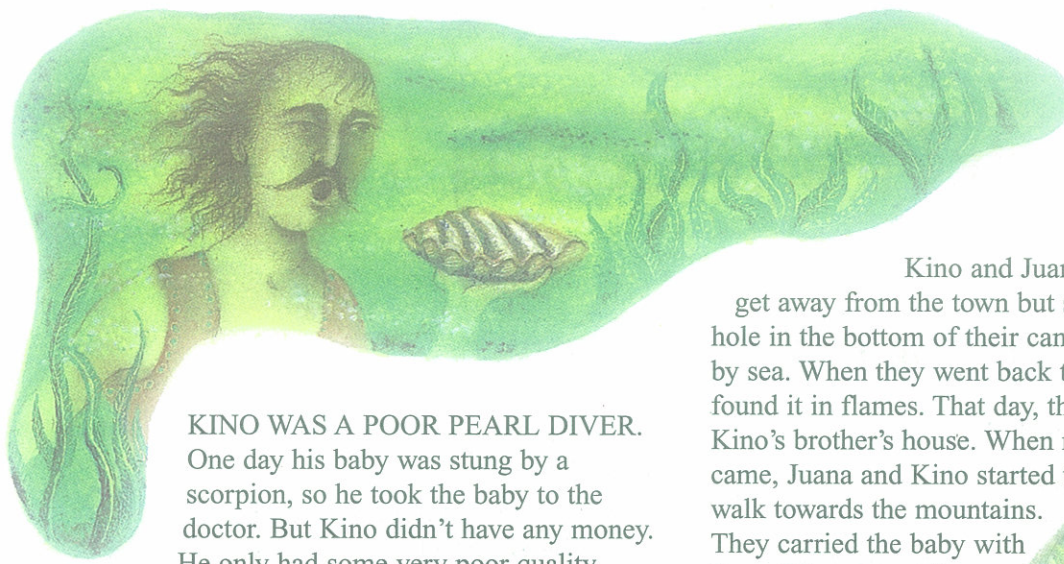
- a) The hunters thought there was a coyote. One of the hunters shot and killed the baby.
- b) The following day, Kino tried to sell the pearl in the main square of the town.
- c) Somebody burnt down their house and they had to hide.
- d) They left the town and started to walk to the capital.
- e) That day, when he was diving, Kino found an enormous pearl.
- f) Someone tried to get into their house in the middle of the night.
- g) Some men attacked Kino and he killed one of them with a knife.
- h) One day Kino's baby was stung by a scorpion, so he took the baby to the doctor.
- i) In the end, Kino threw the pearl back into the sea.
- j) Some hunters followed Kino and Juana into the mountains.

4 Read the story again and answer these questions:

- 1 Why did the doctor refuse to treat their baby?
- 2 Why did he visit them later that day?
- 3 Why did people try to get into Kino and Juana's house?
- 4 Why was Kino unhappy with the price the dealers offered him?
- 5 Why did he decide to go to the capital?
- 6 Why did the hunters follow them?
- 7 Why did Kino and Juana throw the pearl back into the sea?

5 Read the story again. Which of these do you think is the best moral to the story?

- a) money only brings unhappiness
- b) poor people can never win
- c) society is very unfair
- d) we should not exploit the sea



KINO WAS A POOR PEARL DIVER.

One day his baby was stung by a scorpion, so he took the baby to the doctor. But Kino didn't have any money.

He only had some very poor quality pearls. The doctor didn't want to treat the baby, so the doctor's servant lied to Kino: "The doctor has gone out."

That day, Kino went diving for pearls. When he was diving he saw a very large oyster. He swam down and down and picked up the oyster. Then he came to the surface. He took his knife and opened the shell of the oyster. Inside, there was an enormous and beautiful pearl – the greatest pearl in the world!

Kino and his wife Juana were very happy. Now they would have enough money to educate their son and maybe buy new clothes and even a rifle. The news of the pearl spread through the town very quickly. That evening, lots of neighbours came to their house and they talked about what Kino and Juana could do with the money.

The doctor and his servant also came to the house, because they had also heard about the pearl. The doctor made Kino and Juana afraid about the scorpion sting. He gave the baby medicine, which he said would save him. The doctor looked around the house, because he knew that the pearl would be hidden somewhere there.

In the middle of the night, while Kino and his family were sleeping, Kino suddenly heard a noise. Someone was trying to get the pearl! In the darkness, Kino jumped up with his knife but someone hit him on the head and ran away. The next morning he took the pearl to the pearl dealers in the main square of the town. There were many dealers but they all worked for one man and they always gave the divers the lowest possible price for their pearls. Kino went to different dealers but they all said that the pearl was too big and ugly and that it wasn't worth more than 1,500 pesos.

Kino was very angry. He decided to go to the capital city because he knew that the pearl was very valuable. But that night someone attacked him outside his house. Juana said that the pearl was evil and that it was going to destroy them. She tried to throw the pearl into the sea, but Kino stopped her. Soon afterwards, he was attacked in the darkness by a group of men. He defended himself with his knife and killed one of the men.

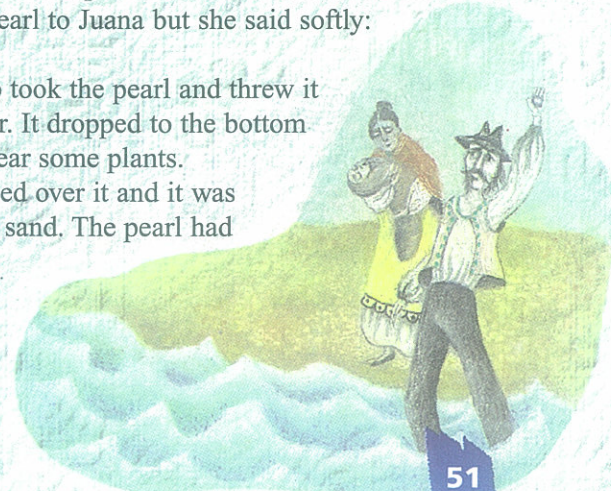
Kino and Juana knew that they had to get away from the town but someone had made a hole in the bottom of their canoe, so they couldn't go by sea. When they went back to their house they found it in flames. That day, they hid in Kino's brother's house. When night came, Juana and Kino started to walk towards the mountains.

They carried the baby with them. Kino was still determined to sell the pearl and kept making plans about the future. During the day, they found a place to hide. They were resting when they saw that three hunters were following them. They hid and stayed very quiet until the hunters had gone past. Then they ran to the mountains.

High in the mountains, they found a stream and a waterfall. They drank water and then decided to hide in one of the caves under the waterfall. That evening, the hunters arrived and camped next to the waterfall. Juana had difficulty keeping the baby quiet, so Kino decided to go down and try to kill the men. He was just about to attack them, when the hunters heard the baby. They thought that it was a coyote.

A man fired his rifle just as Kino attacked. Kino then took the man's rifle and killed the other men. But suddenly everything went very quiet and Kino knew that something was wrong. He went back to the cave. The baby was dead! He had been hit by the first rifle shot. Kino and Juana walked back to the town carrying the body of their dead baby. They walked slowly. The people came out to meet them but Kino and Juana ignored everybody. They walked towards the sea. Kino took out the pearl. It was grey and ugly, and in the pearl he could see evil faces. He offered the pearl to Juana but she said softly: "No, you."

Kino took the pearl and threw it into the water. It dropped to the bottom and settled near some plants. A crab climbed over it and it was covered with sand. The pearl had disappeared.



Language Problem-Solving 4

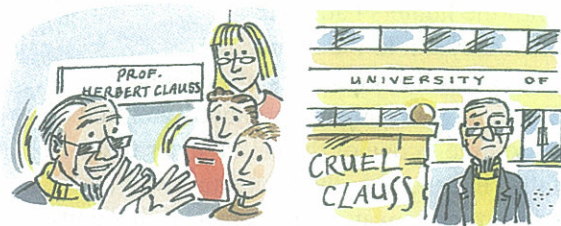
VERBS FOLLOWED BY *-ing* FORM AND INFINITIVE

1 Match the captions with the pictures.

- I've **stopped eating** sweets.
- I've **stopped to eat** a chocolate.



- I **regret to tell** you that all of you have failed the exam.
- I **regret telling** them that they failed the exam.



- It's so stuffy in here – let's **try opening** the window.
- It's so stuffy in here – let's **try to open** the window.



- Remember to visit** Notre Dame!
- Remember visiting** Notre Dame for the first time?



2 Match the verbs in **bold** from Exercise 1 with these definitions.

- to recall an activity that happened
- to give up something
- to make an effort to do something (see if you can do it)
- to feel sorry about something that happened
- to interrupt an activity in order to do something
- to do something as an experiment, to see what will happen
- to bear in mind an obligation to do something
- to feel sorry for something you have to do

3 Complete the sentences with *-ing* form or infinitive of the verbs in brackets.

- If the soup doesn't taste very good, try _____ (add) some salt.
- We regret _____ (inform) you that your application has not been accepted.
- On the way to the cinema I stopped _____ (buy) the cinema guide.
- This place looks familiar, I remember _____ (be) here before.
- You're too slow, Peter. Try _____ (run) faster or you'll never get the ball.
- I'd like to lose some weight so I've stopped _____ (eat) sweets.
- I've got your car keys. Don't you remember _____ (give) them to me?
- They regretted _____ (go) camping in May as it was cold and it rained a lot.
- Chris never remembers _____ (turn) everything off before going out – he always leaves something on.

4 Complete the sentences so that the dialogues make sense.

- A: I hate cash machines! I just can't make them work!
 B: Let's see. Try _____.
- A: How are you getting on with your new boss?
 B: Oh, please, don't ask me! I regret _____.
- A: I feel horrible. I have headaches every day.
 B: I think you should stop _____.
- A: I think I'm ready. We can go.
 B: Did you remember _____?

Language Power



10 Money

1 A MATERIAL WORLD

① ★ *a little* (positive) and *much* (negative) with uncountable nouns
Complete these sentences.



Two poor people.

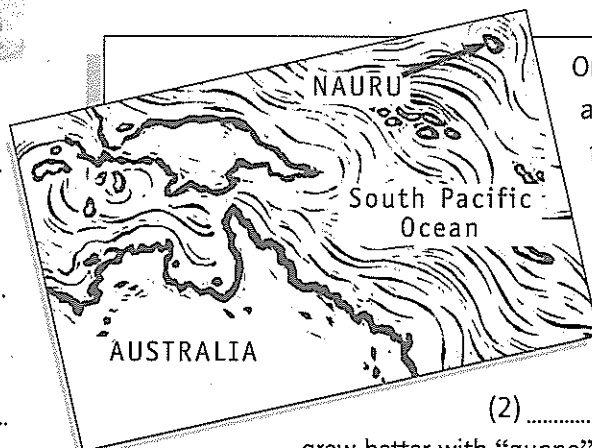
- 1 Last week there was *a little* snow on the ground.
- 2 I didn't have money so I was walking to school.
- 3 I wanted to buy food for lunch with my bus money.
- 4 A poor man in old clothes stopped me. "I need help from you," he said.
- 5 I didn't have time but I said "OK."
- 6 "I'm having difficulty with the street names," he said. "Where's Lea Street?"
- 7 I told him, and then I gave him money.

② ★ *a few* (positive) and *many* (negative, questions) with plural countable nouns

Tick the correct sentence and cross out the wrong one.

- 1 a) Do you want to buy a few videos? ✓
b) ~~Do you want to buy many videos?~~
- 2 a) I don't have a few shirts, only three or four good ones.
b) I don't have many shirts, only three or four good ones.
- 3 a) I read a few good books on holiday last year.
b) I read many good books on holiday last year.
- 4 a) Have you seen many good films in the last year?
b) Have you seen a few good films in the last year?

③ ★ ★ ★ *some, any, no, a lot of, many, much, a little, a few*
Complete the text with the correct words in brackets.



Only (1) *a few* (a little/ a few) people live on the twelve-square-kilometre island of Nauru, in the South Pacific Ocean, but all of them are very, very rich from the "guano" on the island that comes from the seabirds.





(2) (Many/Much) things grow better with "guano", so it's very valuable.

The people of Nauru have sold it for £500 million. And are they happy? "The money has brought (3) (any/no) happiness to the island," says someone. The islanders can buy (4) (much/a lot of) things so (5) (many/much) islanders buy things and then don't use them. In front of (6) (a lot of/much) houses on the island you can see (7) (a few/a little) £20,000 cars, sometimes four or five for one house. Nobody uses them. (8) (Some/A little) teenagers want to leave the island. "We have (9) (no/a little) life here," says Peter Cook, who is fifteen years old. His family has three £30,000 boats but they are not happy. "There aren't (10) (any/some) clubs or discos here," says Peter. "There's nothing to do."

Determiners

4 ★ *all of* and *both of* (with plural verbs) *none of* and *neither of* (with singular verbs)

Paula Williams is talking about her family – her brother Gary, her mum and dad and herself. Write sentences using the cues. Then write sentences about your own family.

	all of us 	none of us 	both of us 	neither of us 
like watching TV	✓			
(like) jogging		✓		
(learn) French				✓
often (go) to parties			✓	

5 ★ ★ *another, the other, other, the second*

Complete the text with the correct expression.

The Mirror newspaper looked at what three women spend their money on. The first of them, Jo, spends all her money going to all her football team's games.

(1) *The second* of the three, Lisa, spends a lot of her money on food. (2) woman in the survey, the third one, Claire, spends her cash on her home.

Jo won't miss a Manchester United game. She won't watch (3) team at all. She buys Manchester United shirts and all (4) team clothes. "(5) people say I look like a boy," says Jo. "But my dad doesn't!"

Lisa spends money on food in two ways: She spends £100 a week at the supermarket. (6) way is restaurants.

Jo and Lisa don't save very much. But (7) girl in the survey, Claire, saved about £4,000 for her wedding last year. She also buys furniture and (8) things for her home all the time. (9) thing she spends money on is make-up and her hair. Like (10) girl in the survey, Lisa, she also goes to work by train, and that is expensive.

6 Vocabulary

Complete the passage with the correct words below.

For the whole summer, John had been working as a (1) for the Daily Newspaper. He was very (2), but he didn't earn much money so he lived in a (3) with nine other men. John had a very enjoyable time with his roommates. It would have been lonely living by himself. His family lived in the country and they were (4) that he was enjoying the city.

But now it was winter, and John and his roommates were cold. They needed a (5) on the floor and a (6) to cook hot food. But the owner of the dormitory was a very (7) man. He didn't even (8) his old clothes! He always burnt them so that no one else could use them. John had once seen him lighting a pile of clothes with a (9)! He was a rich (10) who was well-known for being (11) to people. So instead of talking to him, John wrote an article for his newspaper with the title "Freezing to Death While Owner Burns Clothes".

- a) businessman b) journalist
c) student d) author
- a) easy-going b) careful
c) hard-working d) lazy
- a) dormitory b) apartment
c) flat d) hotel
- a) unhappy b) happiness
c) pleased d) sad
- a) bed b) curtain
c) cloth d) carpet
- a) fridge b) stove
c) kettle d) laptop
- a) kind b) dangerous
c) greedy d) generous
- a) take away b) take off
c) give up d) give away
- a) flash b) flashlight
c) fire d) cigarette
- a) businessman b) journalist
c) professor d) student
- a) generous b) rude
c) easy d) kind

2 THE RIGHT PRICE

1 Shopping and bargaining

Complete the dialogue with these phrases.

Can I have a look at, it's very pretty. How much is it please, I'll take it, I haven't got that much cash with me, Come on, But I can only offer you forty

Customer: (1) *Can I have a look at* that jacket, please?

Salesgirl: Sure.

Customer: (looking at the jacket) (2)

Salesgirl: Fifty pounds. It's leather.

Customer: Yes, (3)

Salesgirl: Yes, pretty and good quality leather, too.

Customer: Yes, I like it.

(4) (she looks in her purse) Oh no!

(5) I've got forty pounds. That's all.

Salesgirl: It's worth more than forty pounds!

Customer: Oh, I know!

(6) (laughs) (7)

you're not selling many things today.

Salesgirl: OK. Forty pounds.

Customer: Good! I'll take it.

2 Money

Finish the words below. The first letter is given. Then use them to complete the sentences.

osct	<i>c</i> ost	gabarin	<i>b</i>
asch	<i>c</i>	ueval	<i>v</i>
feofr	<i>o</i>	codisunt	<i>d</i>

- The shoes*cost*..... £85, which is expensive, but they are leather.
- It was a summer shirt and I bought it at Christmas so I got a on the price.
- I couldn't believe it! A gold necklace for £20. That's very good
- I couldn't believe it! A gold necklace for £20. That's a
- I counted all my coins and notes but I didn't have enough
- The jacket cost £70 in the market. I said, "I can you £55. That's all I've got."

3 Vocabulary

Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each gap. The first letter of each word is given.

I have a very good job at Computer Electronics. I like (1) *what* I'm doing there and I (2) e about \$4,000 a month. My (3) s is much higher than my husband's. But the problem is that I'm not very (4) c with money. I usually go to an antique shop at the beginning of the month and (5) s most of my money on an old armchair or some other piece of furniture. Many of these things are very (6) e ; a small chair may cost up to \$2000. Of course I try to (7) b for a lower price but I'm not very good at it. My husband doesn't buy many things but he is a very generous man and he tries to (8) g some money to the poor every week. The result is that at the end of the month we can't pay the bills or buy food. So I usually ask my friends to (9) l us some money. I never (10) b more than \$300 from one person and try to give the money back as soon as possible. My husband says we should open a bank account and (11) s some money every month. I guess he is right.

4 Vocabulary

Complete the dialogue with the correct forms of the words below.

cash, scarf, bargain, enthusiastic, ashamed, boot, comment, salesgirl, leather, necklace, aggressive, clothing, annoy, product

- Jan: Look at that beautiful (1) It would keep my neck warm in winter!
- Bob: But it's summer now and you've just bought a (2) Just because something is a (3) doesn't mean you have to buy it!
- Jan: OK, don't get (4) with me, Bob. I was just being (5)! I didn't say I was going to buy it.
- Bob: It just really (6) me when you (7) on all these pretty things. It makes me feel like you want me to buy them for you.
- Jan: Bob, you ought to be (8) of yourself. You know I'm a (9) in a (10) store. I need to know what (11) are on sale in other shops to do my job well!
- Bob: You're right. I'm sorry.
- Jan: Oh! Look at those (12)! They're real (13) and I must have them. Do you have any (14), Bob?

Remember

how much and how many

We use *much* with uncountable nouns and we use *many* with plural nouns.

Examples: *How many English lessons do you have every week?*

How much homework do you have?

1 ★ ★ **how much or how many? (1)**

Complete the questions.

- 1 people are there in your class?
- 2 teachers are there in your school?

- 3 food did you eat for lunch?
- 4 presents do you usually get on your birthday?
- 5 sugar do you put in your tea?
- 6 petrol does the family car use?
- 7 time do you have for homework in the evening?
- 8 rain have you had in your city this year?

2 ★ ★ ★ **how much or how many? (2)**

In your notebook, write questions and answers about your school with how much and how many. Use these nouns.

exercise books, time, homework, teachers, English, students, computers, classes

3 **Underline the mistakes in the following sentences and write the correct words.**

- 1 There are 12 boys in my class but we never play football together because neither of them likes it *none*
- 2 There aren't much people who like this kind of humour.
- 3 I have a few time, so I can help you with your homework.
- 4 I hate only two dishes. One is sweet and sour pork and the another one is chicken soup.
- 5 I can't buy this dress because there aren't enough money in my bank account.
- 6 I have broken my left arm again! Fortunately, nothing has happened to my second one.
- 7 My mum is great! She says I can go to the disco and I mustn't clean my room today.
- 8 They always have problems with their three children. Both of them hate eating.
- 9 There is a few eggs in the fridge if you are hungry.
- 10 He is very selfish and never helps another people.
- 11 My twin brother and I are very similar. All of us have brown eyes and dark hair.

3 YOUR MONEY

① ★ Main verbs or infinitives

Complete the passage using the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

Parents in China (1) (spend) an increasing amount of money on their children. Most of the money (2) (spend) on food, clothing and education, but many parents now give their children pocket money too. This (3) (mean) that children in China today have much more money (4) (spend) on themselves.

According to a survey, children in the 5 major cities in China (5) (receive) more than 1 billion yuan a year in total. This is enough (6) (build) 100 Hope Primary Schools.

A lot of educators seem (7) (worry) about the amount of pocket money children have (8) (spend) nowadays. They (9) (question) the idea of giving children pocket money, and they (10) (believe) that it is equally important (11) (teach) children the value of money and how (12) (use) their money in the best way.



② ★ ★ Infinitives with “to” or without “to”

Most verbs are followed by infinitives with “to” but some verbs are followed by infinitives without “to”.

Read the sentences and underline the infinitives. Then fill in the table.

- 1 The glasses help him to see small objects.
- 2 The police officer made the man open the box.
- 3 The teacher encouraged the students to do the exercises by themselves.
- 4 His father wouldn't let him go out alone.
- 5 Doctors always advise people to eat more vegetables and fruit.
- 6 The operation allows her to hear better.
- 7 Hot weather makes me feel tired.
- 8 “Mum, please let me watch TV,” said the boy.
- 9 The children told me to watch the football match on TV.
- 10 I persuaded her to show me her new house.

Verbs followed by infinitives with “to”	Verbs followed by infinitives without “to”

③ ★ ★ Infinitives

Match two parts of the sentences with infinitives. Use “to” if necessary.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 I have the confidence | a) pay for the damage. |
| 2 The doctor told me | b) see the wedding dress tomorrow. |
| 3 I'll let you | c) stay out late. |
| 4 The old man doesn't like | d) win the game. |
| 5 It's broken. Make him | e) take the medicine. |
| 6 It was a mistake. I had | f) celebrate your birthday. |
| 7 I'll make a cake | g) see people wasting food. |
| 8 Her parents wouldn't let her | h) say sorry. |

4 ★ ★ too ... to ... / ... enough to ...

Rewrite the sentences following the model.

- 1 The room is too small.
It cannot hold so many people.
The room is too small to hold so many people.
- 2 I can't drink this tea.
It's too hot.
.....
- 3 Three people can't sit on this bench.
It isn't wide enough.
.....
.....
- 4 We couldn't climb over the fence.
It was too high.
.....
.....
- 5 I don't use this blanket in winter.
It isn't warm enough.
.....
.....
- 6 James couldn't move the cupboard.
It was too heavy.
.....
.....

5 ★ ★ It is + adj. for sb. to ...

Put the words into the correct order to make sentences following the model.

- 1 to/extremely/the value of money/it/for/learn/
teenagers/important/about/is
*It is extremely important for teenagers to learn
about the value of money.*
- 2 the doctor/necessary/to/it/for/go to/is/ Mary
.....
.....
- 3 disappointing/cinema/for us/it/the/closed/to/
was/find
.....
.....
- 4 the/him/was/book/to/it/read/interesting/for
.....
.....

6 Vocabulary

Complete the sentences with the words in the box. Remember to use the correct verb forms.

contain, cause, destroy, force, develop, admire, improve, create

- 1 She's going a lot of trouble.
- 2 The teacher helps the student his English.
- 3 Last week, a robber broke into his house and him to hand over some diamonds.
- 4 This box enough explosives to blow up a tall building.
- 5 It is necessary opportunities for young people.
- 6 The boss helped the staff new skills.
- 7 He read the letter and it to prevent the others from finding out.
- 8 He likes sports stars.

Word Corner

Put these words under the correct headings.

approximately	behave	remove
advanced	destroy	diamond
importance	environment	crop
erosion	protect	soil

NOUNS

ADVERBS

ADJECTIVES

VERBS

4 ADVERTISEMENTS

1 Vocabulary

Complete the sentences with the words below.

laptop, photography, useless, bath, kettle, signal, refrigerator, credit card

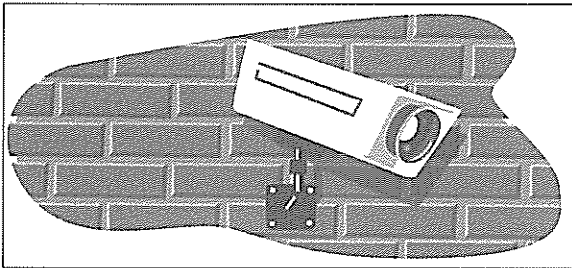
- 1 Please put the on. I want a cup of coffee.
- 2 What a big camera! Do you study
- 3 Our broke yesterday so we have no ice.
- 4 Mary has a She often works on it in bed.
- 5 Do you have a in your new apartment? Mine only has a shower.
- 6 You can only start when you see the
- 7 I have no cash. I will pay for dinner on my
- 8 I dropped my mobile phone in the river and now it's

2 Describing objects using facts

Read and complete the text with these phrases.

put this, it's not, it costs, it has (x2), it's made from, you can, it's a

WORRIED AT NIGHT?
Afraid that people will come into your home and take your things?

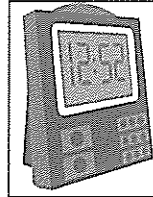


- (1) *Put this* camera on the wall outside your house. (2) security camera.
- (3) real but only you know that.
- (4) only £14.99, so for just under £15 you'll never sleep badly again.
- (5) a good quality strong white plastic. (6) move it up, down, left or right. (7) no wires but
- (8) a red light that goes on and off.

3 Describing objects using opinions

Read the text and underline ten opinion adjectives or expressions. Then complete the sentences with some of them.

Example: *reliable* = opinion (someone thinks this)
 £29.99 = fact (we know this)



This reliable, easy to set alarm clock is a bargain at only £29.99. Just set the date and the alarm and you don't have to worry about a thing. Just go to sleep! Made from an attractive and strong material, it is not expensive. This is a really useful present for a wedding or a birthday. The bride and bridegroom or the "birthday boy or girl" will love this practical and easy to use present.

- 1 My computer is very reliable. I never have a problem with it.
- 2 The time and date on my video is not I can't understand it!
- 3 My mum's a journalist so the camera I bought her is really
- 4 My friend's new computer is very He was using it ten minutes after he bought it.
- 5 I wanted a present for Dad, so I bought him a pen.
- 6 The alarm clock won't break. It's made from material.

4 Words that go together

Copy and complete the table with the words below. Then add new words. Use a dictionary to help.

nouns: CD player, car radio, credit card, laptop, leather jacket, washing machine, mobile phone, headphone, floor cleaner

adjectives: really advanced, top quality, easy to use, gold, silver, plastic, easy to wash, cheap, excellent value, convenient, practical, useless, automatic, electrical

nouns	adjectives
CD player:	really advanced, top quality

Focus on reading

ADS ALL AROUND

Advertisements can be seen everywhere in this modern world. It is estimated that Americans view an average of 1,500 ads every day! With the rapid economic growth in China, you can expect a number doubling that in the near future.

If you think you know all the ad tricks in the book and will never be talked into buying something you don't really want, wait till you finish reading this article.

While "hard-sell" ads are easy to detect — such as those with cheerful Olympic champions or film stars holding products and feeding you reasons why they are bargains — we are less clever when faced with "soft-sell" methods. The most common technique of this kind is to make customers think there is an immediate need to buy the product. So next time you see words like *hurry, act now, last chance, now or never* etc., think twice. Most of the chances aren't as short-lived as they seem to be.

Is that the only type of soft-sell advertising? Of

course not. Soft-sell advertising includes giveaway samples and concert sponsorships. Different types of advertising work in different places and for different products. "There's never a one-size-fits-all technique. It has to be tailor-made for each situation," says Gillian Greene, Creative Director of CheesyBee, an advertising company in London.

Other than speaking directly to customers, some ads are also made for investors and shop owners. Why? Because when the investors see the expensive, well-made ads, they believe that the company is running a good business. Then they're happy to invest more money in it, even though the ad itself does not appeal to anyone in the street. In the same way, shop owners prefer to stock well-advertised goods because they know that customers are more likely to buy them.

Therefore, advertising can help sell goods even when it's not directed at the customers. Ads work in every stage of a business, and that perhaps is the best ad for the industry itself.

Read the article and circle the best answers.

- 1 What is this article mainly about?
 - a) It is hard not to be influenced by ads.
 - b) It is easy to run a good advertising business.
 - c) Advertising helps make money.
 - d) Advertising helps industries grow.
- 2 The "soft-sell" technique mentioned in Paragraph 3 refers to:
 - a) Products that are real bargains.
 - b) Short-lived ads.
 - c) Misleading words that appear in ads.
 - d) Images of Olympic champions.
- 3 Which of the following is true according to the article?
 - a) "Soft-selling" methods are easy to detect.
 - b) Not all ads are speaking directly to customers.
 - c) Tailors are needed in making ads.
 - d) Customers should always think of buying goods in a hurry.
- 4 In the sentence "Then they are happy to invest more money in it, even though ..." in Paragraph 5, what does "it" refer to?
 - a) the advertisement
 - b) the company
 - c) the customer
 - d) the "soft-sell" method
- 5 Who is Gillian Greene?
 - a) Someone who works in an advertising company.
 - b) Someone who sells bees in London.
 - c) Someone who works in markets.
 - d) Someone who sells clothes.
- 6 What can you conclude from the article?
 - a) If we are careful, we can avoid ads.
 - b) Expensive ads are more attractive.
 - c) Customers will buy goods that are well-advertised.
 - d) Ads are powerful.

Focus on writing

1 Linking words of addition: *also, too, either, plus*

Write two sentences using the linking words in brackets and the cues.

1 This CD player/really advanced/top quality (too)
This CD player is really advanced. It's top quality, too.

2 This security camera/reliable/not very expensive (also)

3 This necklace/good quality gold/is excellent value (plus)

4 This vacuum cleaner/not very advanced/not good quality (either)

5 This mobile phone/easy to use/cheap (too)

2 Punctuation: Commas in large numbers

Add the correct punctuation to each sentence.

- Claire lives in a small town that has only 55,000 people in it.
- The nearest city has 2764000 people in it.
- Claire earns £25000 a year as a teacher.
- John earns £15000 a year working in a garage.
- He lives in a little village that has only 2500 people in it.
- The nearest town has 27546 people in it.

3 Spelling

Read these sentences and circle the correct word.

- Jenny is a very a) enthusiastic b) inthusiastic c) enthusastic girl.
- I was very a) anoied b) anoyed c) annoyed when John lost my CD.
- I live close to school. It's very a) convinient b) convenient c) convienient.
- Put the milk in the a) refrigerater b) refridgerator c) refrigerator.
- I am a) aproximately b) approximately c) aproximitely 6 feet tall.

4 Guided writing: Describing objects

Write an advertisement for one of the products below using these expressions.

Facts about the product: It's not, It costs, It has, It's made from, You can, It's a

Opinion adjectives and expressions: really easy to use, advanced, very cheap, attractive, useful, practical, good quality, excellent value, top quality

5 Translate the following sentences into English.

- 她决意把孩子送出国去接受可能受到的最好的教育。 She for the best possible education.
- 由于一直为环境问题担忧，这个年轻人决定毕业后直接到环境保护组织工作。 As he, the young man an environmental protection organisation after graduation.
- 在我看来，实现过上愉快、舒适生活的唯一办法就是努力奋斗。 In my opinion, is to work hard for it.
- 她决定退出那家公司，一周工作 60 个小时她受不了。 She decided because she 60 hours a week.
- 我真正关心的是，如果我买这套公寓的话，可以打多少折？ What I'm really concerned about is ?
- 我们需要帮助年轻人在在校期间就逐步树立责任感。 We need to help young people
- 迈克计划联系那家公司，看他们是否能给他提供一份收入较高的工作。 Michael has planned if they can
- 我总是很钦佩杰克打比赛的方式以及所展示的必胜的决心。 his way of playing at the matches and

KEY WORD BANK

Adjectives for opinions: aggressive, ashamed, attractive, boring, cheap, convenient, delicious, enjoyable, enthusiastic, excellent, exciting, expensive, fantastic, firm, good/top quality, greedy, hard-working, interesting, noisy, pleased, practical, reliable, rude, strong, tiring, useful, useless, valuable

-ed and -ing adjectives: amazed/amazing, bored/boring, disappointed/disappointing, excited/exciting, interested/interesting, relaxed/relaxing, satisfied/satisfying, tired/tiring

Adverbs: approximately, extremely, quite, really, very

Countable nouns: armchair, bargain, bath, blouse, boot, businessman, carpet, cigarette, cleaner, cookie, credit card, crop, customer, diamond, disk, dormitory, fax, flash, grocery, headphone, homeland, journalist, kettle, laptop, mobile phone, motherland, necklace, product, refrigerator, resolution, salesgirl, salesman, scarf, signal, software, stove, textbook, valley, vase, vest, wallet, wire

Uncountable nouns: amusement, balance, clothing, concern, economy, erosion, focus, freedom, importance, leather, photography, popcorn, soil, translation

Determiners: some, any, much, many, a little, a few, no, a lot of, both, neither, all, none, the other, other, another, the second

Facts about a product: advanced, has an automatic focus and flash, gold, plastic

Products: CD, computer game, e-dictionary, electric toothbrush, fax machine, laptop computer, leather jacket, mobile phone, necklace, pair of jeans, radio alarm clock, T-shirt, washing machine



Shopping words and phrases: a bargain, to bargain, cash, discount, price, supermarket, shops, market, I'll take ..., I'll give you ..., offer, cash, worth, fair, Can I help you?

WORD POWER

① **Words that go with *make, give* and *go***
A millionaire has given all his money away and lives in a dormitory. Complete the sentences with the correct word a, b or c.

- The millionaire was happy to*give*..... up the lifestyle of a rich man and live in a small dormitory with old furniture.
a) make b) go c) give
- The change in the millionaire's lifestyle is not sad because he the choice.
a) made b) went c) gave
- He knew there were hungry people in the world so he away all his money.
a) made b) went c) gave
- "Most people want to earn a lot but they never much money," the millionaire said.
a) make b) go c) give
- Now he says he doesn't want to back to being rich.
a) make b) go c) give

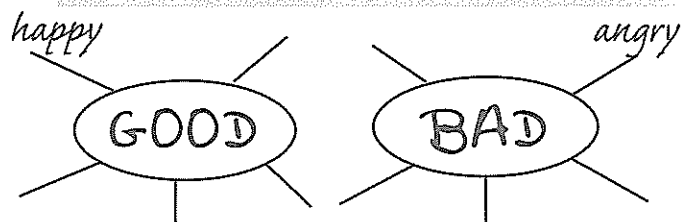
② **Words that go together**
Write these adjectives with all the nouns they can go with. Add more adjectives to each list.

confident, aggressive, angry, reliable, gold, polite, generous, second-hand, lovely, practical, convenient, expensive, easy to use

- a person *confident*
- a computer
- a necklace
- a car

③ **Adjectives: Describing feelings**
Add adjectives for good and bad feelings to the diagram. Use a dictionary.

happy, angry, bored, confident, excited, tired, interested, hungry, aggressive, free



CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

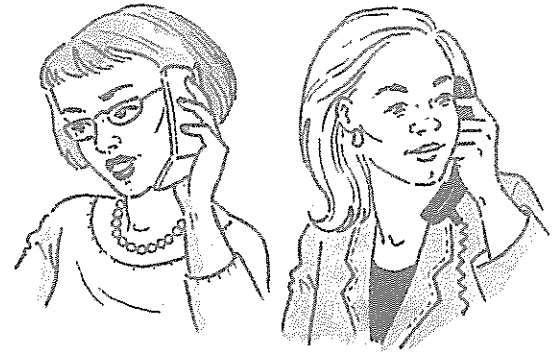
1 Fill in the blanks using the correct form of the verbs in the box.

spend, appeal, spare, improve, travel, do, receive, visit, design

What would you do if you had a million dollars (1).....? Would you know what (2)..... with so much money? Perhaps, you could spend the money on yourself. You could decide (3)..... around the world. Wouldn't it be fun (4)..... all your foreign penfriends? If this idea fails (5)..... to you, how about asking a jewellery shop (6)..... a special collection of diamond rings? You could give a ring to each member of your family. They would be pleased (7)..... such a wonderful present. If you decide not (8)..... your money in this way, you could always give some of it to charity. Just think about all the people you could help. Your money would help them (9)..... their lives.

2 Huang Xiaoli is a salesgirl in a gold shop. She is talking about her work. Complete the text with *some, any, no, a lot of*.

I arrive at work at 8:30 a.m. every morning. I take (1)..... of our gold necklaces, and rings and (2)..... of our gold animals and put them in the shop window. We are selling (3)..... gold rabbits at the moment because this year is the Chinese year of the rabbit. There are twelve animals for twelve years, then you start again. But we have (4)..... gold snakes! We don't have (5)..... gold animals that are not one of the twelve either. When there is a new girl or boy in the family, (6)..... parents buy a gold animal as the child's first present but not (7)..... parents do this because gold is very expensive. Thousands of customers come to the shop every day so there is (8)..... time to talk to the other salespeople. I work for twelve hours every Monday, Wednesday and Friday. There isn't (9)..... time to go out and eat but the shop gives us (10)..... good food for lunch and dinner. We have meat, fish, vegetables and soft drinks, so there are (11)..... problems with food. I work until 9 p.m. I don't earn (12)..... money — between ¥1,000~1,200 a month. But (13)..... months I sell more and then I earn more. There are also (14)..... months when I don't get ¥1,000. When I get home, I don't have (15)..... time for hobbies. I watch TV and then go to bed.



3 Two businesswomen are talking about their work. Complete the text with *all, both, neither, none*.

Paula and Maria are (1)..... businesswomen but (2)..... of them are millionaires. Maria sometimes earns £400 a month, which is not much in the world of international business. Her job is very stressful. "(3)..... of the people in my company get to work later than 8:15 a.m.," she says. (4)..... Maria and Paula like breakfast. Paula has hers at the office (a cup of tea, fruit and vegetables). (5)..... of her customers do business by computer. Maria's customers want to know if prices are going up or down and (6)..... of them use computers too. So (7)..... the businesswomen, Maria and Paula, are at their computers all morning. "(8)..... of our customers write letters now," says Paula. "Everything is done on the computer." (9)..... of the women often leave the office in the afternoon. Maria talks business with customers at a coffee shop. Paula goes to other offices. (10)..... women go to bed at midnight. Maria often works in the evenings on her computer at home, but Paula doesn't.

4 Circle the correct form. Before you start, read the whole text carefully. You will need to read the text more than once before you decide on your answer.

The ten richest millionaires in the world

(1) *All/None* of the richest people in the world have a lot more than one million pounds or one million dollars. (2) *Neither/None* of the ten richest people has less than \$16,500,000 – Michael Dell (3) *has/is having* that and he's at number ten. (4) *It isn't/There aren't* any people in the top ten who are under thirty, but Michael Dell is only thirty-four. Many of the world's richest men are married with children, but not all of them – Paul Allen, the fourth richest man in the world, (5) *lives/has lived* with his mother all his life. Three of the ten (6) *worked/were working* for the same company when they first (7) *became/were becoming* millionaires. The men (8) *were/have been* Bill Gates, Paul Allen and Steven Ballmer, and the company was Microsoft. Bill Gates (9) *started/has started* the computer company Microsoft and he is now the richest person in the world. Four of the top ten (10) *are/have been* in the computer business but you (11) *have to/don't have to* work with computers to get rich. You (12) *can/have to* be a financial dealer like Warren Buffet, the second richest man in the world, or your country (13) *can/has to* have oil like the Sultan of Brunei, the third richest man in the world. Not all rich people spend their money, but there are (14) *some/any* rich people who spend a lot, for example, the Sultan of Brunei has 800 cars and his house has 1,788 rooms.

5 Mark the nouns countable (C) or uncountable (U).

water (u) picture (c)

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1 furniture () | 6 pen () |
| 2 person () | 7 news () |
| 3 chair () | 8 newspaper () |
| 4 homework () | 9 tree () |
| 5 milk () | 10 fruit () |

6 Circle the correct word.

Tom: I'm hungry and I haven't got *some/any* food. I've got (1) *no/any* money so I can't buy (2) *no/any* food. Have you got (3) *any/money* money?
 Sue: Yes, I've got (4) *a few/a little* money. We can buy (5) *many/some* sandwiches.
 Tom: Were there (6) *many/much* people at Emma's party?
 Sue: Yes, there were (7) *a lot of/many* people there but I didn't know (8) *a lot of/many of* them.
 Tom: What about the food?
 Sue: Well, there wasn't (9) *much/some* food. There were (10) *no/any* pizzas or hamburgers but there were biscuits and chocolates.

7 Complete the sentences with *another, other, the other, second, all, none, both, neither*.

- Did Sue win the race? – No. Anna won it and Sue came *second*.
- Close your right eye. Now close eye.
 - This pen doesn't work. Have you got one?
 - There was a train accident yesterday but of the people were hurt.
 - This is the time I've seen this film. I saw it last year in London.
 - my parents are teachers.
 - Some people like to play sports. people prefer to watch.
 - the children in the school were given sweets.
 - The two boys were playing a game. One of them hid a ball and tried to find it.
 - Mary and her sister play the piano well but of them likes to sing.
 - The boy fell out of the tree and broke his legs.

8 Complete the sentences with these words:

bargain, cash, discount, lend, lose, save, spend, win

- I didn't any money in the lottery this week.
- I haven't got any money with me. – Don't worry, I can you £5.
- They all their money on clothes.
- The price of the CD players includes 10%
- Can I pay by cheque? – I prefer to have, please.
- I want to some money and buy a new bicycle.
- These shoes were a They were £40 and I bought them for £20 in the Sale.
- Every time I go to the casino, I all my money.



11 The Media

1 WORLD NEWS

① ★ **Passive verb forms**
Underline all the Passive verb forms in these World News reports. Write the tense next to each Passive verb form.

WORLD NEWS

ITALY: Thirteen-year-old singer Charlotte Church has been invited to sing for the President of the USA and the Pope on the same day. She hasn't decided which invitation to accept.

USA: A phone box in the middle of California's Mojave Desert is being phoned by web surfers after the number was posted on a website. Next month a film is being made about this – it's called Dead Line.

TURKEY: Five days after Turkey's second earthquake of the year, a woman was dug out of her home alive. On Tuesday rescuers said they had given up hope of finding more survivors.

AUSTRALIA: Yesterday it was admitted by the government in Sydney that many of the tickets for the Sydney Olympic Games had not been offered to the public. For one final, just 16 of 19,400 tickets were being put on sale.

② ★ **Active or Passive? (1)**
Which is more natural? Tick a, b or both.

- 1 a) There is silver in the necklace.
b) The necklace is made of silver. ✓
- 2 a) Somebody built the Eiffel Tower in Paris in 1889.
b) The Eiffel Tower in Paris was built in 1889.
- 3 a) The cook is making your pizza for you now, sir. Sorry about the wait.
b) Your pizza is being made for you now, sir. Sorry about the wait.
- 4 a) Someone was cleaning the painting when the accident happened.
b) The painting was being cleaned when the accident happened.
- 5 a) Call the police! Someone has stolen my watch.
b) Call the police! My watch has been stolen.
- 6 a) He was dead. Someone had murdered him with a knife.
b) He was dead. He had been murdered with a knife.
- 7 a) Someone will send your examination results to your home on 8 August.
b) Your examination results will be sent to your home on 8 August.
- 8 a) People can't use the old ten-pound notes after 1 September.
b) The old ten-pound notes can't be used after 1 September.
- 9 a) In the future, builders are going to make homes of plastic.
b) In the future, our homes are going to be made of plastic.

③ ★ ★ **Rewrite these sentences using the Passive, where the Passive is natural or possible. Leave out the doer of the action.**

- 1 You can never find him when it's time to wash up.
He can never be found when...
- 2 You look good in that new shirt.
- 3 The firm hasn't offered me a job.
- 4 Are you still going to paint that old building?
- 5 Are you waiting for Peter?
- 6 They were still measuring the earthquake.
- 7 I didn't lose my purse until later.
- 8 You can't ride my bike.
- 9 You can't use that printer with that computer.
- 10 Our teacher didn't show anybody in the class the question paper.

4 ★ ★ Passive questions

Rewrite these questions using the Passive. Leave out the doer of the action.

- 1 When did somebody tell him the news?
When was he told the news?
- 2 How many books can people take out of the library at any one time?
.....
- 3 Who will they ask to dance first?
.....
- 4 Is somebody following us?
.....
- 5 Was somebody feeding the animals when the elephant escaped?
.....
- 6 Are we going to put the presents under the Christmas tree after dinner?
.....
- 7 Had somebody driven this car before you paid for it?
.....
- 8 How do you make spaghetti?
.....
- 9 Have they eaten all the food?
.....

5 ★ ★ ★ Active or Passive? (2)

Read and complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

CHINA: The world's smallest plane (1) (invent) in China. It (2) (weigh) just 100 mg and it (3) (take off) and (4) (land) in a space the size of a desk. At the moment, it (5) (use) by the police to film people from above.

LONDON: Fifteen pieces of Chinese jewellery which (6) (keep) in the British Museum, although they originally came from China, (7) (find missing) on Saturday. The police said they (8) (probably steal) on Friday night.

USA: A boxing match that (9) (call) "the first ever between a man and a woman" (10) (take place) today. Kick boxing champion Margaret Macgregor, 36, (11) (fight) Loi Chow in Seattle.

6 Complete the passage with the correct words below.

Last night I was invited to dinner with four other people. Our (1) for the evening was Jim Masters, a very interesting man. He is a (2) advisor to the government even though he is already about 70 years old! He is also on a (3) of businessmen that (4) a magazine every month. The name of the magazine is OTT and this (5) "Only the Truth". In this magazine they cover many topics such as (6) in poor African (7) They also discuss different political (8) and how they will help different countries. They even write about terrible diseases such as (9)

When we arrived for dinner at 8 p.m., Mr Masters told us that he had something to (10) He said that he was not going to be making dinner for us after all. Instead, he was (11) to inform us that he was taking us all out for dinner. He had just opened a (12) because he had decided that it was time for him to retire from public life!

- | | |
|----------------|--------------------|
| 1 a) host | b) guest |
| c) guide | d) friend |
| 2 a) national | b) political |
| c) hired | d) experienced |
| 3 a) committee | b) organisation |
| c) group | d) agenda |
| 4 a) demands | b) sells |
| c) prints | d) publishes |
| 5 a) stands up | b) stands out |
| c) stands for | d) stands in |
| 6 a) poverty | b) reform |
| c) opportunity | d) problem |
| 7 a) areas | b) administrations |
| c) governments | d) nations |
| 8 a) questions | b) debts |
| c) reforms | d) conditions |
| 9 a) AIDS | b) headache |
| c) alcohol | d) sex |
| 10 a) believe | b) announce |
| c) annoy | d) reform |
| 11 a) sad | b) ashamed |
| c) delighted | d) enthusiastic |
| 12 a) pub | b) administration |
| c) bank | d) government |

2 THE PAPARAZZI

1 Agreeing and disagreeing

Read the opinions (1–3). Which of (a–d) is agreement, strong agreement, disagreement, strong disagreement? Write A, SA, D, SD. Then agree or disagree with the opinions.

- 1 The Beatles were the best pop group there has ever been.
 - a I totally agree. SA
 - b I'm afraid you're wrong.
 - c You may be right, but the Spice Girls were good too.
 - d I don't agree.
 My opinion: *I think*
- 2 TV programmes with sex and violence in them should be shown late at night.
 - a I'm afraid I can't agree with you.
 - b I agree. You're right.
 - c I personally agree.
 - d I totally disagree.
 My opinion:
- 3 Famous people don't really want privacy. They want to be in the newspapers.
 - a That's right, but some more than others.
 - b I completely agree.
 - c I can't agree.
 - d I'm afraid I can't agree with you.
 My opinion:

2 Expressing opinions

Complete the table.

Famous people (alive or dead)	Why is he/she famous?	What is your opinion of him/her?
1 <i>Shakespeare</i>	<i>He wrote great plays.</i>	<i>I think ...</i>
2		
3		
4		
5		

Vocabulary

3 Phrasal verbs: turn, come, go

Complete the sentences with words from the box.

up, with, down, from, after, at, back, to (x2), round (x2)

- 1 Peter hadn't turned *up* by eight o'clock so we went the party without him.
- 2 He came New York. Next week he's going to China.
- 3 I'm on the phone and I can't hear. Please turn the TV
- 4 Laura went that Saturday job at the newspaper but she didn't get it.
- 5 Liz has gone to Jo's house. She's coming in half an hour.
- 6 People who are coming a European country should go the passport control desk over there.
- 7 Turn and let me look you – no, that make-up doesn't go your dress.

Remember

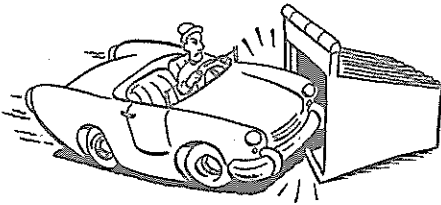
Modal verbs for advice

should and *shouldn't* are used to give advice, especially when you are expressing your opinion about the action.

Ought to is almost the same as *should* but it is often used when the advice is NOT personal.

1 ★ ★ *should/shouldn't*

Use the cues to write captions for each cartoon.



1 You/smaller car.
You should buy a smaller car.



2 You/coat.
.....



3 You/in the street.
.....



4 You/dance.
.....

2 ★ ★ *ought to/ought not to*

Write sentences from the table in your notebook. Then write three sentences of your own, giving advice to parents, teachers and the government, using *ought to/ought not to*.

Parents		start smoking.
Teenagers		give their children more pocket money at fifteen.
The government	ought to	allow smoking on buses or the underground.
Teachers	ought not to	help their children with their homework.
		allow students to wear make-up in lessons.
		give so much homework.
		tell their parents everything.

Examples: *The government ought not to allow smoking on buses.*

3 Complete the passage with the correct words below.

Some people have difficulty staying (1) They usually (2) everybody else for this fact when the problem actually lies with them. If they were (3) to listen, I would tell them that all they need to do is change their (4) They can start this (5) very easily. All they need to do is (6) their behaviour honestly, and admit that their problems (7) from their own actions, and not from the actions of others. Maybe they get into too many (8) They may also defend their behaviour by saying that they (9) their boss. But at the end of the day, if they want to stay employed, these people have to (10) to have a more positive attitude, even if they have to (11) to like people that they really can't stand!

- 1 a) legal b) employed
c) willing d) conscious
- 2 a) blame b) criticise
c) talk with d) complain
- 3 a) asked b) delighted
c) willing d) happy
- 4 a) altitude b) attempt
c) attitude d) personality
- 5 a) change b) process
c) lifestyle d) problem
- 6 a) analyse b) defend
c) respect d) admit
- 7 a) exist b) appear
c) rise d) arise
- 8 a) jobs b) arguments
c) attempts d) questions
- 9 a) admire b) respect
c) dislike d) blame
- 10 a) take b) become
c) demand d) attempt
- 11 a) look b) pretend
c) show d) act

3 THE ADVERTISING GAME

① ★ Main verbs or gerunds?

Complete the passage using the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

CCTV enjoys (1) (finish) 2003 on top

There are only two more days to the end of the year, but already 2003 (2) (be) described as a great year for CCTV (Chinese Central Television). Since January, the TV station (3) (increase) its advertising sales by 18.2% from 2002, earning approximately 7.53 billion yuan.

Yesterday, CCTV managers held a news conference. When asked if she minded (4) (give) a reason for the station's success, one manager admitted (5) (work) with mobile phone makers to develop successful advertisements in 2003 had increased CCTV's advertising sales a lot.

When asked if CCTV's managers were satisfied with this year's results, another manager replied that all the managers were very happy and had considered (6) (give) staff a pay rise for their hard work. When one reporter asked the manager jokingly if he had received a pay rise, the manager stopped (7) (talk) for a moment and smiled a big smile.

When asked (8) (comment) on CCTV's goals for 2004, the TV station's business development manager suggested (9) (work) more closely with car and food companies (10) (develop) successful advertising campaigns.

② ★ ★ Gerunds or infinitives (1)

Match two parts of the sentences using gerunds or infinitives.

- | | |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 There is no point in | a) collect the books. |
| 2 We can start | b) clean the flat. |
| 3 She forgot | c) argue about the matter. |
| 4 I don't want | d) promise anything. |
| 5 Is it time | e) complete this project. |
| 6 They've finished | f) pick the fruit? |

③ ★ ★ Gerunds or infinitives? (2)

We tend to use the infinitive form of verbs when we see the word "to". But sometimes, we need to use gerunds.

Complete the sentences with the gerunds or infinitive forms of the verb phrases in brackets.

- They were able to (go) to the wedding.
- John has to (do) his homework.
- Mrs Fu looked forward to (spend) Chinese New Year in Paris.
- "Soon, all of you will get used to (talk) in English," said the teacher.
- Mary chose to (study) science at university.
- I used to (play) the piano often.

★ ★ ★ Gerunds or clauses?

④ In less formal sentences

Look at the example:

Do you mind if I use your dictionary?

In more formal sentences

Do you mind me using your dictionary?

Rewrite the sentences to make them sound more formal or less formal.

- Would you mind not interrupting me all the time?
Please don't
- It's not a good idea to travel during Christmas.
It's better to avoid
- You can't stop me reading what I want.
I can read
- The driver said it was true that he didn't have a car licence.
The driver admitted
- Could you turn the music down, please?
Would you ?
- I'm sorry I said rude things to you. I regret

5 Complete the passage with the correct words below.

My (1) Terry is a product designer. He works for a big drinks (2) that has recently launched a new product. It is a new type of (3) and at the moment, they are looking for the right company to (4) it for them. They want a good company that will develop the (5) and come up with the right type of advertisements. They want very (6) ads that will (7) from other ads. They don't want the ads to look like (8) beer ads either. They would rather use a new (9) and even a bit of (10) They believe that if people laugh, they remember. They have a huge (11) to advertise this new product and Terry's (12) is to help design the bottles. I saw his designs the other day. The bottles are going to be square!

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 1 a) niece | b) nephew |
| c) advertiser | d) boss |
| 2 a) product | b) advertiser |
| c) lab | d) corporation |
| 3 a) bear | b) beer |
| c) food | d) medicine |
| 4 a) advertise | b) sell |
| c) produce | d) make |
| 5 a) product | b) brand |
| c) idea | d) quality |
| 6 a) new | b) expensive |
| c) visual | d) delighted |
| 7 a) stand out | b) different |
| c) stand for | d) appear |
| 8 a) same | b) unusual |
| c) certain | d) classic |
| 9 a) approach | b) tradition |
| c) company | d) advertisement |
| 10 a) happiness | b) funny |
| c) sadness | d) humour |
| 11 a) collection | b) business |
| c) budget | d) profit |
| 12 a) contribution | b) duty |
| c) administration | d) ability |

Word Corner

Match the words in the box with the correct advertisements.

jeweller's, builder, dentist, café, airline, cinema, gym, supermarket, disco, laundry

- 1 We have more beautiful necklaces and rings inside the shop.
jeweller's
- 2 Watch all the new movies here!
- 3 Keep fit and look good. Join us now!
- 4 Get your children's teeth checked NOW.
- 5 We collect your clothes and you will have clean shirts and blouses the next day.
- 6 Dance all night to the best music in town!
- 7 Shop here for all the food you need.
- 8 We make flying as easy as riding a bike.
- 9 Join us for the most delicious cake and get a free coffee!
- 10 No job too small. Painting inside and outside.

4 WHAT'S IN THE PAPERS?

1 Complete the table with the words in the box.

dialogue, golf, headline, scene, producer, health and beauty, fishing, chess, plays, articles, page, quizzes, famous people, the press, full page advertisement, the news, photograph, channel, local, soap operas, computers

TV programmes	Magazines about	Newspapers
<i>dialogue</i>	<i>golf</i>	<i>headline</i>

2 Read the magazine article. Underline the cultural references to the USA (1-5) and answer the questions.

The temperature is touching 101°F this June day in Georgia but the 300-strong audience – many of them children – are quiet. Up on the stage Stella McLean is telling a story about a little boy who puts a fish back in the sea. Stella finds parents for children who have no parents. She works in three of Georgia's counties. And today's event is a picnic where 36 children aged between six and seventeen will meet their possible future parents. The parents walk round, talk to the children and they all decide if they want to be together as a family. Last year Chuck and Jolene Pitts (pictured in their backyard on the cover) met Tommy at this picnic and Tommy is now their son.

- A measurement of heat. How do we write it in China?
- A state of the USA. Is it in the north or south?
- A word that tells you how the state is divided. What's the word in Chinese?
- A word that describes part of a US home.
- An outdoor event. What's your opinion of what is happening?

3 Match the compound adjectives with the nouns. Then use the phrases to complete the sentences.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|------------|
| 1 ten-pound | a audience |
| 2 400-strong | b lesson |
| 3 well-known | c actress |
| 4 fifteen-year-old | d note |
| 5 two-hour | e mountain |
| 6 three-thousand-metre-high | f girl |

- I gave the man *a ten-pound note* when I bought *The Times* and got £9.65 back.
- A won one of the big women's tennis championships in the USA last year.
- Mrs Pierce gave us a just before the exam. It helped us to revise everything.
- At the age of forty, fireman Dennis Thomas climbed a
- The shouted for more after Shania Twain finished singing.
- A called Barbara Windsor is appearing in the soap *EastEnders* on TV.

4 Complete the text with the words below.

ambulance, district, ex-husband, fog, ankle, scene, tyre, sightseeing, muddy

Yesterday, Mary heard that her (1) had broken his (2) He had been doing (3) in the country and got lost in the (4) ! He kept on walking, and finally landed up in a (5) field. In this field, he fell over a sleeping sheep and hurt himself. He phoned the (6) doctor on his mobile phone, and then waited in the mud for the (7) to come. But when it arrived, its (8) got stuck in the mud! He only got to the hospital four hours later. Mary described this whole (9) to me with a big smile on her face. "He always hated sheep!" she said. I don't think the sheep liked him very much!

Focus on reading

Reading Between the Rings

The Olympic Games is always a big event but when the Games returned to its birthplace in Athens, Greece, in 2004, there was even more excitement than usual. This explains why the city was packed with more journalists than sportsmen, all of them competing, not for medals, but for the best pictures and the most news worthy stories.

Because every person sees things in their own way, the stories coming out of Athens were often very different, even when the facts they covered were exactly the same.

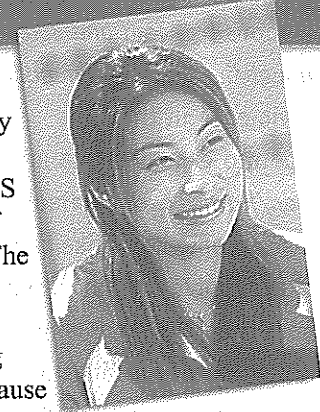
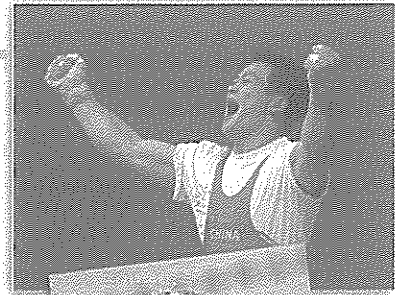
For example, when the Chinese team won a record-high of 62 medals, the Chinese journalists recorded China's reaction as one of "pleasant surprises". On the other side of the world, journalists wrote about people's "stunned" reactions to China's success.

When it came to the reasons behind China's success, the Xinhua News Agency said it was the fruit of "years of effort". The *Observer*, a UK magazine, however, put China's success down to "the vast sum of money" that the Chinese government had put into creating medal winners. "They have money, they have people, they have pride; and what they don't have, they can either

copy to perfection or just buy." wrote Tracey Holmes for CNN.

Some journalists described China as a "sports tsar" — a country to be feared by the traditional sports super-states like the US — and Filip Bondy of NBC Sports wrote, "The joke in Athens is that there is no reason to show up at the Beijing Olympics in 2008 because there will be no medals

left — even the medal stands are being built to fit the locals." And in the Chinese reports? The media remained modest. "China will perform even better in the Beijing Games but isn't ready to compete with the United States for the top place," wrote China Daily. We'll just have to wait and see.



1 Choose the conclusion for the article from the two options below.

- a) From the above examples, we can clearly see that there are always different views and explanations to one event. Therefore, we should always listen to various sides of a news report and think critically before making any decisions about what to believe.
- b) These examples show that Chinese reporters are more realistic than western ones, and therefore, we should only believe them when reading reports about the Olympic Games.



2 Read the article again and decide if the following statements are true or false.

- 1 There were more journalists than sportsmen in Athens during the Olympics.
- 2 Reporters from different countries always share the same view.
- 3 Tracey Holmes thought the Chinese reporters were very rich.
- 4 According to *China Daily*, China will not be ready to compete with the USA in 2008.
- 5 There was a joke in Athens saying there will be no medals left in the 2008 Olympics.
- 6 China is one of the traditional sports super-states.



Focus on writing

1 Linking words: Contrast

Circle the correct answer.

- 1 Although As well as/Suddenly I don't play football, I like watching it on TV.
- 2 The newspaper didn't use my letter about TV violence. *In the end/However,/Also* I'm happy that I wrote it.
- 3 Cartoons like *Tom and Jerry* are popular *even though/in addition/ immediately* there is a lot of violence in them.
- 4 A potato exploded in a microwave. *Suddenly/ Then/However*, only minor damage was caused.
- 5 Some people don't like the advertisements on TV *and/but/after that* other people like them more than the programmes.
- 6 Violent scenes in films are a problem when the film is shown on TV, *although/too/one day* some viewers think violence is ok if it is funny.

2 Punctuation: Names and titles

Read the punctuation rules and then correct the sentences, adding or changing capital letters where necessary.

The titles Mr, Mrs, Ms and Dr are not followed by a full stop in British English.

The names of organisations have capital letters but no full stops when they are written as initials.

Some names have become words like the first letters of the World Trade Organisation (WTO). These, too, have capital letters and no full stops.

Days of the week and months have capital letters but seasons don't.

Capital letters are used for countries, nationalities and languages.

The points of the compass (north, south etc.) have capital letters only in place names.

- 1 it was a warm spring day in april, a tuesday, i think
- 2 we drove west and finally got to the west end, the centre of london.
- 3 (british english) mr. And mrs. Smith met ms. Jones and dr. Morris at a party.
- 4 she was born in hungary but she's polish now. She speaks polish and hungarian
- 5 i.t.v. Is getting bigger audiences than b.b.c. At the moment
- 6 there are some new countries in w.t.o.

3 Guided writing: A formal letter

Write a paragraph from a letter to a newspaper about violence on TV. Use some of the sentences on this page, your own ideas and some of the contrast linking words below.

however, although, but, even though, even if

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

4 Translate the following sentences into English.

- 1 詹妮翻阅我的私人信件时恰好让我撞见了，我要求她立刻做出解释。
I my personal letters and
- 2 据报道，昨晚音乐会的主要听众是青少年。
It's reported that
- 3 节食和锻炼结合起来才最有效。
Diets are most effective when
- 4 学校认为，它的工作就是培养学生准备为社会做出贡献。
The school sees its job as
- 5 犯罪调查结束前警察拒绝对其发表评论。
..... the investigation of the crime until it is completed.
- 6 他们把没有达成协议的责任归咎于谁了？
..... of reaching an agreement?
- 7 众所周知，北京主办了2008年奥运会。
It's well known that
- 8 我真难过，不管提什么建议，他们总是反对。
I feel really upset, because

KEY WORD BANK

TV programmes: chat show, game show, quiz, soap opera, the news, TV series

Magazines about: cars, computers, current affairs, fashion, films, music, sport, travel

Newspapers: a local paper, a national paper, mass media, the press

Famous people and the press: fans, paparazzi, photographer, stress

Environmental issues: air pollution, environmental protection, noise pollution, over-fishing, traffic pollution

Health: AIDS, effects on children's health, risk of diseases, sex education,

Countries: administration, citizen, nation

Organisations: committee, corporation, spokesman

Advertising: advertise, advertiser, advertisement, budget, concept, visual

Opinion adjectives: amusing, awful, boring, brilliant, clever, colourful, funny, serious, shocking, silly, successful, terrible, unusual

Compound adjectives: all night, early morning, 83-year-old, hand-made, long-haired, old-fashioned, two-week, well-known

Phrasal verbs: turn on, turn off, turn up, turn down, turn over (channel), turn away (from something), turn up (arrive)

Wordbuilding: advertise/advertising/advertisement/advertiser, photograph/photography/photographer, organise/organisation/organised, agree/agreement/disagree/disagreement, apply/application

Expressing opinions: I'm in favour of ..., In my opinion ..., It seems to me that ..., Personally, I'm against ..., Personally, I think that ...

Disagreement: I completely disagree, I don't agree, I'm afraid you're wrong, I'm afraid I can't agree with you

Agreement: I totally agree, You may be right, I agree, That's true, You're right

Polite interruptions: Can I say something? Can I interrupt a moment? I'd just like to say ...

WORD POWER

1 Wordbuilding

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

- I think all Zhou Xingchi's films are, even though some have serious scenes. (amuse)
- There are several famous in Britain, like Patrick Lichfield. (photograph)
- Bali is a very place to go on holiday. (attract)
- Elton John was a trained before he started writing pop songs. (music)
- In 1993, Chris Herbert and his father Bob put an in a music paper for girl singers – and that was the start of the Spice Girls. (advertise)

2 Compound adjectives

Use words in boxes A and B to write compound adjectives. Then complete the sentences with the compound adjectives.

A hand, well, early, old, all, two, hard, high, long

B known, made, night, morning, week, haired, fashioned, hitting, fat

- Go for an *early-morning* run in our fantastic NIKE trainers. Only £105!
- We only sell jewellery in our shop. Nothing is made by machine.
- You can get TALKHEAD, the computer game here. Everybody's playing it!
- Don't eat snacks any more. Try our wonderful diet toast and lose weight.
- Get your DAILY NEWS here. Britain's most newspaper. A shock a page!
- Food all the time at cheap prices. Try JOE'S Café.
- Try our sweets. Sweets like your parents used to eat!
- I am going abroad. My beautiful dog, Albert, is free to a good home.
- Bargain holidays! Go on the cheapest holiday you'll ever have.

CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1 Review of articles

Complete this newspaper report with the correct articles: *the, a* or *X* (no article).

In July 1995 (1) Chances Peak volcano in (2) south of (3) Caribbean island of Montserrat became active for (4) first time in 350 years. There was (5) volcanic explosion. In June 1997 (6) another volcanic explosion destroyed (7) villages in (8) middle of (9) island, killing (10) 23 people.

2 Passive

Rewrite these sentences using the Passive. The first words are given. Leave out the doer of the action.

- 1 You can't feed a cat on dog food.
A cat
- 2 By the time we got on the train, somebody had taken the last seat.
The last seat
- 3 Do they speak Italian in Switzerland?
Is
- 4 Nobody is giving Peter any help with the exam.
Peter
- 5 They are not rebuilding the High Street until the end of the year.
The High Street
- 6 Somebody stole a painting by Cézanne from a museum in Oxford in 1999.
A painting by Cézanne
- 7 Was anybody looking after the baby when he fell off the chair?
Was the baby
- 8 Has anybody opened this bottle of mineral water?
Has this
- 9 Somebody will pick you up from home and take you to the match.
You
- 10 Mary had taken the books back to the library.
The books

3 Complete the passage using the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

The (1) (advertise) of products and services is big business and recently even charities have started (2) (use) them to raise money. Last week, an advertisement from a charity campaign was voted among the most successful in 2003. The result has surprised many people because TV stations stopped (3) (show) the advertisement after they had received complaints from the public. The advertisement, which shows an insect moving from a baby's mouth, was the work of Gordon Finley. In a recent interview, Mr Finley admitted having used the shocking picture to make people think. "I don't regret (4) (use) the picture because it has created a lot of interest. Also, I don't want people to stop (5) (think) about poor children," he said. Asked if he minded (6) (describe) as horrible, Mr Finley replied, "I'm going to avoid (7) (answer) that question," but added that complaints won't stop him from (8) (create) more advertisements for the charity in the future.

4 Complete this radio news report using the Passive form of the verbs in brackets.

Good afternoon. The lunch-time news today

(1) (read) by John Howard.

The Prime Minister has visited a primary school in Ipswich where she (2) (meet) by the children and their teachers. She opened a new sports centre that (3) (build) with money raised by the parents and teachers. Another £20,000 (4) (need) to finish the swimming pool so more money raising activities (5) (organise) for the summer months.

Earlier today a group of teachers was in an accident when their coach (6) (hit) by a truck. The teachers (7) (help) by local people until ambulances arrived. Most of the teachers (8) (allow) to go home immediately, but those with more serious injuries (9) (take) to Norwich Central Hospital later today.

5 Complete the sentences using the words below.

innocent, fiction, strawberry, spokesman, contemporary, sew, as long as, load, in favour of, bush, evidence, electricity

- 1 The lights won't work because there is no
- 2 I will help you with your homework you stop watching TV now.
- 3 Can I help you? That is a heavy you are carrying.
- 4 Are you this new law to stop people smoking?
- 5 My mum all my clothes for me.
- 6 There is a lot of that he was the person who stole the book.
- 7 I don't think he did it. I think he's
- 8 I love to eat with cream.
- 9 He hid the knife under a in the garden.
- 10 The has to explain what the team thinks.
- 11 I like to read books that are
- 12 David really likes art. He doesn't like old paintings very much.

6 Circle the correct preposition or adverb to form phrasal verbs in the sentences.

- 1 When we have visitors we turn off/over the television.
- 2 My father always goes to sleep with the television turned on/over.
- 3 My sister turns on/over the channel to annoy me.
- 4 I turn down/to the volume during the advertisements.
- 5 When I want to watch football, I turn to/up my mum for support.
- 6 The ugly duckling turned into/out a beautiful swan.
- 7 It's too late to turn in/back the clock.

7 Circle the correct words in the letter.

Dear colleagues,

.....

On the 14th of June we will be holding a party to (1) celebrate/celebration the success of our latest game (2) show/opera. As you know, *Win a Car!* is very (3) popular/popularity and we are (4) delight/delighted to hold a big thank-you party for the staff and successful players. The (5) organise/organisation of the party is being done by my assistant.

.....

Yours faithfully,

Julia Smith

8 Match the words in the two columns to form "media" words.

- | | |
|-----------|--------------|
| 1 chat | a) opera |
| 2 soap | b) show |
| 3 current | c) affairs |
| 4 quality | d) letter |
| 5 formal | e) newspaper |
| 6 radio | f) design |
| 7 visual | g) programme |



12 Culture Shock

1 VISITING BRITAIN

1 ★ Complete the table with the verbs below. Then complete the sentences with the verbs in brackets in the correct form (-ing or infinitive).

avoid, enjoy, want, consider, hope, plan

verbs + -ing	verb + infinitive
suggest, can't stand, miss, dislike, mind, recommend	decide, afford, promise, expect, refuse, need, continue

- I promised (get) *to get* home by ten but the bus was late.
- We only had twenty pounds, so we couldn't afford (go) anywhere expensive.
- The tourists expected (leave) at three o'clock.
- I suggested (wait) for a bus but they wanted (walk) .
- Mr Johnson enjoyed (learn) German at school and continued (study) the language when he was older.
- I hoped (do) well in the exam, so I suggested (ask) David to help us.
- Laura dislikes (be) with children so she doesn't plan (be) a primary school teacher.
- We can't stand (wait) in queues but we don't mind (visit) places where there are lots of tourists.

2 ★ ★ Write sentences in your notebook, using the table.

Example: *I expected to see a football match in London.*

I expected	to leave a lot of money in the hotel.
I don't want	to see more old buildings.
How can we avoid	staying in a cheap hotel.
They couldn't stand	to see a football match in London.
He advised me	watching all those tourist shows.
I don't mind	to show you the best places.
I promise	spending too much on holiday?

3 ★ ★ Read the Tour of London. Complete the text with the verbs in brackets in the correct form (-ing or infinitive).

Tour of London

Start at Baker Street Station. Sherlock Holmes lived at 221B Baker Street but don't expect (1) (see) him there now. While you are in the area you will want (2) (visit) Madame Tussaud's Waxworks. You should expect (3) (be) amazed at the Planetarium next door, where you can see the stars indoors. If you like (4) (watch) animals, you're in the right place because you aren't far from London Zoo, in Regent's Park. If you decide (5) (go) to the zoo, we recommend (6) (walk)



across the beautiful park first. And don't miss (7) (feed) the animals at the zoo. You can buy animal food to give them. From the zoo, you can avoid (8) (take) the underground or (9) (catch) a bus a little while longer and still do something interesting. We suggest (10) (go) to Great Portland Street next, where you can go up the 188 metre Telecom Tower for a great view of London, but we don't recommend (11) (eat) up there as it's very expensive. After that it's back on the underground again at Goodge Street Station. You need (12) (change) trains at Embankment Station to get to Westminster Station. From there you can visit the Houses of Parliament which are still there even though Guy Fawkes hoped (13) (blow them up) in 1605. There's a lot to do in London but you won't be able (14) (see) everything in one day.

4 ★ ★ Rewrite the sentences, starting with the words given, and the *-ing* or infinitive form of the verb.

- 1 It was John's idea to go to the cinema.
.....
John suggested going to the cinema.
- 2 James said that he would take the library books back.
James agreed
- 3 We told Martha we'd give her a lift.
We've arranged
- 4 "I'm giving you a test tomorrow."
Mrs Keller mentioned
- 5 If the weather is good, we'll play tennis tomorrow.
We hope
- 6 I'm not doing any more work today.
I've finished

5 Vocabulary

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words below.

tipping, brief, apology, absorb, expectation, bacon, mosquito, book, cheque, wander, toast, majority, laughter, foggy, owe, exchange, reasonable, tasty

- 1 When it comes to waiters, I always like to give 10%.
- 2 Danny, I you an I used your bicycle without asking you.
- 3 Use this cloth. It will the water.
- 4 live on the blood of humans and animals.
- 5 What are your of university? What do you think it will be like?
- 6 Don't off. You will get lost.
- 7 I'd like to eat a slice of with jam.
- 8 And I'd like some eggs and, please.
- 9 The tickets are almost sold out. You had better soon.
- 10 Can I change a traveller's in the bank?
- 11 The of the people thought that it was a good idea.
- 12 I heard coming from the classroom. The teacher was very funny.
- 13 It was a dark, night and I couldn't see where I was going.
- 14 Kerry gave a speech and rushed off to go shopping.
- 15 I would suggest you buy it. I think the price is
- 16 Everything is perfect. The food is and the people are friendly.
- 17 We still keep the tradition of gifts at Christmas.



2 MIND YOUR MANNERS

1 Being polite

Write a polite expression for each situation.

1 You are at a train station and you want a timetable.
Excuse me? Do you have a train timetable, please?

2 You are at reception, at a hotel. The receptionist has just given you your passport back and said, "Thank you."

3 A friend has just invited you to a party. You can't (or don't want to) go.

4 You are staying as a guest at the home of an English teenager. You want to speak to the parents.

5 You are speaking to the parents of an English teenager, in their home. You want a lift tomorrow.

6 The parents of the English teenager have just given you a lift. You want to thank them.

7 You didn't reply to a friend's letter. The friend asks you about it.

2 Phrasal verbs with go

Match the verbs and the meanings. Then complete the sentences with the verbs in the correct form.

- a go back
- b go into
- c go without
- d go through with
- e go in for
- f go over
- g go for
- h go up

- 1 do something difficult
- 2 not have something
- 3 return
- 4 be very interested in a hobby or sport
- 5 do again (revise at school)
- 6 go to a place
- 7 increase
- 8 target

- 1 I forgot the map, so I *went back* to get it.
- 2 We didn't understand reported speech until Miss Lincoln it again.
- 3 I've always collected stamps but my brother (not) it.
- 4 Sheila has a small breakfast and then lunch, so she doesn't eat anything until supper time.
- 5 Dave hates exams and he couldn't them in the summer, so he didn't take them.
- 6 A note on the table: "Mum, Laura and I town. We'll be back at 4. Love Kim."
- 7 Are you planning to that scholarship to Yale University?
- 8 Economists predict the cost of buying a new home will by 10% next year.

3 Vocabulary

Complete the passage with the correct words below.

Last weekend the (1) of Rosewood School, Mr Tomson, planned to take a group of students camping. The weather report (2) that it was going to be sunny and they planned to hike to the famous (3) It was famous because a well-known author had written about it in a (4)

All the students packed their own (5) but only a few packed (6) because they didn't think it was going to be cold. Mr Tomson also made a (7) that the children bring (8) as the cave would be very dark.

Early on Saturday morning, everyone met in the school (9) and got onto the bus. All went well until they were an hour outside the city when the bus stopped. The road was blocked by a (10) that had crashed into a truck! There is no other road to the camping spot so they drove back to the city and went (11) instead. Everyone was disappointed but when it poured with rain that night, everyone was happy to be in their own (12) beds!

- | | | |
|----|------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 | a) schoolmate | b) headmaster |
| | c) ancestor | d) host |
| 2 | a) made it clear | b) explained |
| | c) indicated | d) spoke |
| 3 | a) adventure | b) park |
| | c) cave | d) white-water stream |
| 4 | a) novel | b) interview |
| | c) article | d) song |
| 5 | a) sheets | b) blankets |
| | c) cloth | d) curtains |
| 6 | a) sheets | b) blankets |
| | c) foods | d) clothes |
| 7 | a) demand | b) condition |
| | c) rule | d) request |
| 8 | a) fires | b) flashlights |
| | c) flash | d) lights |
| 9 | a) gate | b) classroom |
| | c) courtyard | d) playground |
| 10 | a) jeep | b) train |
| | c) passenger | d) bike |
| 11 | a) caving | b) swimming |
| | c) camping | d) bowling |
| 12 | a) cosy | b) noisy |
| | c) cold | d) cool |

Remember

Positive statements usually have negative question tags and negative statements usually have positive question tags. If there is an auxiliary, the question tag usually uses the same auxiliary as the statement. The question tag after *Let's* is *shall* and after the imperative the tag is *will you*.

Examples

- You are John's brother, aren't you?*
You aren't David's brother, are you?
We start at nine, don't we?
We don't finish until late, do we?
Let's ask a teacher, shall we?
Don't play that CD, will you?

1 ★ ★ Question tags

Complete these sentences with question tags.

- You won't be late, ?
- You'll be there on time, ?
- Tom's going, ?
- They know the way, ?
- Let's go now, ?
- Don't tell Peter, ?
- Mrs Smith doesn't play the piano, ?
- I'm right, ?
- We haven't met before, ?
- You wouldn't answer, ?

2 ★ ★ ★ In your notebook, write sentences with the question tags below.

doesn't it? does she? has he? wasn't it? weren't they? was she? have they? shall we? will you? won't you?

3 LIVING ABROAD

① ★ Present Participles or main verbs

Complete the passage with the correct form of the verbs in the brackets.

I remember my first day in Beijing. It was very funny. I (1) (learn) some basic Mandarin in *pinyin* so I decided to put my new language skill to the test. (2) (arrive) at Beijing International Airport, I was asked by a customs officer to open my big suitcase. (3) (point) to my books, he asked if I was planning to sell them in Beijing. "No," I replied. "I'm going to read them on my 'shujia'." (4) (look) surprised, the officer asked, "Are you sure that would be safe?" "Of course," I replied. "I always read lots of books during my school holidays." "Do you mean 'shujia', 'summer holiday' instead of 'shujia', 'bookshelf'?" asked the officer before (5) (laugh) and (6) (explain) my mistake.

Later that afternoon, I went to a restaurant. (7) (study) the menu carefully, I told the waiter I wanted "shuijiao". (8) (look) puzzled, the waiter said, "This is a restaurant, not a hotel". I (9) (repeat) the word "shuijiao" several times, but still the waiter couldn't understand what I (10) (talk) about. Then a young man at the next table asked, "Do you mean 'shuijiao', 'dumplings' instead of 'shuijiao' 'sleep'?" "Yes!" I replied. (11) (thank) the young man, I said "shuijiao" loudly. Everyone laughed and within minutes, I (12) (enjoy) some very nice dumplings.

② ★ ★ Position of Present Participles

Put the words into the correct order.

- 1 stretched across / the cold, warm and tropical zones / covering / China / a vast area
China stretched across a vast area covering the cold, warm and tropical zones.
- 2 see / gone out, / The / thing / we couldn't / having / candles / a
.....
- 3 by/ Not having / matter, / were / very surprised / been / the news / of the / informed / we
.....
- 4 the / weather, / Considering / concert / success / a great / the / bad / was
.....
- 5 were / angry / a little / she had, / Knowing / delay/ how / the / we / caused
.....
- 6 restaurant / spent / lunch / Having / Mr / the / three hours / Mrs Wang / left / over / and
.....

③ ★ ★ Present Participles

Join the pairs of sentences using Present Participles.

- 1 Alan was playing tennis. He hurt his arm.
Alan hurt his arm playing tennis.
- 2 Miss Peng was driving to school yesterday. She had an accident.
.....
- 3 I was listening to the radio. I fell asleep.
.....
- 4 He was walking home in the rain. He got wet.
.....
- 5 Amy slipped. She was getting off a bus.
.....
- 6 As I felt ashamed of what I had done, I rang my father and told him everything.
.....
- 7 The river overflowed its banks and caused serious flooding.
.....
- 8 As soon as I saw the queues of cars, I turned around and went another way.
.....
- 9 Anyone who wants to become a journalist has to keep up with current events.
.....
- 10 He stood there and wondered what to do next.
.....

4 ★ ★ ★ Present Participles or other verb forms?

Circle the correct answers.

- 1 dogs seldom bite.
a) To bark b) Barking
c) Barked d) Bark
- 2 They let us park motorcycles here but they won't allow us cars.
a) park b) parking
c) to park d) parked
- 3 What about double quantities of everything today? We'll get a bigger discount.
a) buy b) to buy
c) buying d) bought
- 4 Would you mind your address here and us some proof of your identity?
a) writing/showing b) write/showed
c) to write/to show d) wrote/showing
- 5 He soon got most of them and even managed "Good morning" in Chinese.
a) knew/saying b) know/to say
c) knowing/said d) to know/to say
- 6 Your hair needs a cut. You'd better it done this afternoon — unless you'd like me a go at it for you now.
a) having/to have
b) to have/to have
c) have/to have
d) having/have
- 7 Mr Zhu suggested a meeting and the team members the matter themselves.
a) called/let/deciding
b) calling/letting/decide
c) to call/let/decided
d) called/letting/to decide
- 8 The inspector asked my ticket and when I wasn't able it, he made me another one.
a) saw/to find/bought
b) seeing/found/buying
c) to see/finding/to buy
d) to see/to find/buy

5 Complete the text with the words below.

spoken, appetite, cocoa, outgoing, splendid, dessert, yummy, partner, whisper, stare

My business (1) John loves eating in restaurants. He has a huge (2)! I usually don't eat (3) because I don't want to get fat, but he always orders (4) chocolate desserts. I usually just have a cup of (5) to finish the meal. Of course, all this eating means that John is really fat! People (6) at him all the time and sometimes in restaurants, I see the waiters (7) about him. But John is such an (8) person that he just laughs. Everybody loves him once they know him and I've never heard a bad word (9) about him. Talking of words, his favourite word is one he uses at the end of every meal, "(10)"

Word Corner

Put the words in the box under the correct headings.

Africa	Asia	Auckland	Australia
the Antarctic	Bangkok	Beijing	Berlin
Brazil	Canada	Chicago	China
Europe	Germany	Japan	London
Manchester	Melbourne	Moscow	North America
Oceania	Paris	Shanghai	Sweden
Sydney	Toronto	the USA	the UK

Continents:
.....
.....

Countries:
.....
.....

Cities:
.....
.....

4 THE NEW AUSTRALIANS

1 Countries and nationalities

Complete the table with countries and nationalities. Then complete the sentences below.

COUNTRY	NATIONALITY
Australia	1 <u>Australian</u>
England	2
Italy	3
4	German
Greece	5

- Mel Gibson lives in the USA but he's Australian.
- He is English but his wife was born in Rome, so she's
- Americans use the word "soccer" for football.
- Some older people in Melbourne were born in Greece and have nationality.
- German is spoken in Austria and Switzerland as well as in

2 Adjectives

Replace the words NICE and NASTY in the sentences with words from the box. There are more words than you need.

tasty, popular, top, amazing, interesting, poor, dull, lively, creative, limited, unfair

- Craig thinks that kangaroo sausages are really tasty (nice).
- Jean told me that Charles is the most (nice). He always has lots of new ideas.
- The menu at that restaurant is a bit (nasty). There's just lamb and pork.
- The view from the top of Uluru is one of the most (nice) in the world.
- Jan is a (nasty) student. Her teacher told me she would have to do the year again.
- It's (nasty) when some people are treated better than others by the government.
- Peter Green is a (nice) Australian biologist who is working to help the koalas.

3 Complete the passage with the correct words below.

(1) to popular belief, not all restaurants in Australia serve (2) food and not all Australians are (3) people. In fact, I know several Australian (4) who have never mixed Asian food with Mediterranean food in their lives! And my Australian niece lives on a two (5) piece of land outside of Sydney and hates it. She loves (6) and wants to become a famous writer one day, and she wishes she lived in the city. She is not at all (7) of sports like surfing or hiking and she can't (8) camping. Her family is very (9) and their house is in a lovely (10) with a river and beautiful gardens. But she says that she doesn't (11) in the countryside. She thinks that it's really (12) that she can't move to the city and live by herself. Her parents say that she can definitely do that one day, but seeing as she's only fourteen, she is going to have to wait a few years!

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1 a) Opposite | b) Contrary |
| c) Except | d) Besides |
| 2 a) taste | b) well-off |
| c) fusion | d) export |
| 3 a) outdoor | b) activity |
| c) mixed | d) sports |
| 4 a) sportsmen | b) chefs |
| c) writers | d) citizens |
| 5 a) mile | b) kilometre |
| c) metre | d) acre |
| 6 a) literature | b) sport |
| c) outdoor | d) minorities |
| 7 a) love | b) fond |
| c) like | d) good |
| 8 a) bear | b) go |
| c) stay | d) like |
| 9 a) friendly | b) poor |
| c) well-off | d) traditional |
| 10 a) country | b) view |
| c) field | d) spot |
| 11 a) attach | b) belong |
| c) live | d) forgive |
| 12 a) funny | b) broad |
| c) unfair | d) cosy |

Focus on reading

Living with Differences

Living in a foreign country is fun but it isn't always easy. There are many differences between cultures and although some of these differences are unimportant, some can cause a lot of embarrassment. In addition to the obvious language problems of living in a foreign country, I certainly experienced culture shock when I was living in Paris. I know I'm not the only one so, I spoke to a few foreign friends about how they experienced culture shock in China.

Aubin arrived two months ago from Europe to take part in a language programme in Shanghai. Before he left, he was actually *taught* the differences between European and Chinese cultures, including everything from table manners to classroom behaviour. However, some things have still taken him by surprise. For example, he couldn't understand why waiters did not want to accept the tips he gave them after meals in restaurants. He said that in Europe waiters got angry if you *didn't* leave them a tip! I had to explain to him that people don't usually tip in China and that this comes from the Confucian idea that one must avoid accepting any undue income.

Another friend, Julia, came to Guangzhou from London to teach at a language school. After a month, she told me that she was really let down by her students. I asked her why and she told me that they were

so quiet, that she was the only person talking in class and it felt like the children were punishing her by making her talk to the walls! I explained to her that the children were simply being respectful but she said that it would be more respectful if they answered her questions. I think we should be proud of the Chinese tradition that stresses politeness but I do think that Julia has a good point.

And it is not only the West and the East that have cultural differences. Even Korea and China, two countries that are very close to each other, have differences too. "I thought Chinese and Korean people were the same," said my friend Ji-Hyun in perfect Chinese, "but I was wrong. In ancient times the Chinese used to take their shoes off. They don't do that anymore, but Korean people still do! I keep getting that wrong even though I've been here for five years!"

Luckily, whether we take our shoes off or not, or leave unnecessary tips, the world still runs perfectly. In my opinion, cultural differences should simply be seen as a way of making life interesting. Imagine how boring it would be if we all did everything exactly the same way! Learning to understand and respect differences is, after all, what life is all about.

Read the article and circle the best answer.

- 1 Which of the following is NOT stated in paragraph 1?
 - a) The writer has experienced cultural differences.
 - b) The writer has lived in Paris.
 - c) Culture shocks are language problems.
 - d) It is not easy to live in a foreign country.
- 2 Which of the following is a Chinese practice according to the passage?
 - a) Paying tips in restaurants.
 - b) Taking off shoes when one enters a house.
 - c) Talking to walls.
 - d) Behaving quietly in class.
- 3 What information can you get from paragraph 3?
 - a) English people are not polite.
 - b) The students in Julia's class hate her.
 - c) Standards of politeness are not the same in different cultures.
 - d) Chinese tradition stresses that students should be proud.
- 4 Which of the following is NOT stated in paragraph 4?
 - a) Korean and Chinese used to be the same language.
 - b) In the past, Chinese people used to take off their shoes when entering a house.
 - c) Ji-Hyun has been living in China for five years.
 - d) Korea and China have cultural differences.
- 5 What is the meaning of "let down" in paragraph 3?
 - a) Made angry.
 - b) Disappointed.
 - c) Punished.
 - d) Respected.
- 6 What is the main idea of the passage?
 - a) We live in a world full of cultural differences.
 - b) We should learn to respect other cultures.
 - c) Cultural differences are bad because they create misunderstanding.
 - d) It is hard living in a foreign country.

Focus on writing

1 Linking: Review

Complete the letter with the linking words below.

when, because, so that, first, also, but, finally, like

Lauren, from Australia, is writing to her penfriend in China.

Hi Hanna,

Last week we had a beach barbecue here
 (1) because it was so hot and we didn't want to eat indoors. We started late
 (2) Don, my older brother, could come. He had a class at the university. We
 (3) invited our new neighbours. Guess what? They brought their Leonardo DiCaprio look-alike son with them!
 (4) he told me he's got a girlfriend, which was bad news. He said he'd bring her to the next barbecue (5) she visits – she lives in Sydney, where they used to live. Well, of course, I said "Fine! I'd like to meet her." And I'm not even sad about it, you know, because (6) Sydney is two hundred miles from us and secondly he might forget about her and find someone else.
 (7), me! Anyway, it took me an hour but I (8) asked him to come to the school dance. Not with me, you understand.

Yesterday ...

2 Punctuation: Review

Punctuate the conversation below.

are you going to the rock concert tonight asked craig
 yes replied kylie his younger sister i wouldnt miss
 rem theyre my favourite band
 whos coming asked craig
 bruce is coming and todd wayne sindy and petulia
 oh great we can go in todods car said craig i didnt
 want to ask for our parents car

3 Guided writing: An informal letter

Write the letter again in your notebook in three paragraphs, with the sentences in the correct order. The first sentence is underlined.

Dear Paul,

And is there anything else that I could bring?
 If so, I've got some nice CDs I could lend you.
 Do I need to bring towels and soap? Did you buy your new CD player, in the end? My dinner's ready. How are things with you?
 I must go now. Anyway, I'm writing to ask you what I need to bring, when I visit you next weekend.

See you soon,
 David

4 Translate the following sentences into English.

- 小芳,我昨天心情不好,我应该为我所说的话向你道歉。
 Xiao Fang, I was yesterday. I what I said.
- 我已经逐渐习惯于腌猪肉、鸡蛋、牛奶加几片面包的英式早餐。
 I the British style of breakfast:
- 贝克太太,我搭您的车回家好吗?
 Mrs Baker, could you ?
- 校长要求学生不要在食堂大声喧哗。
 The headmaster
- 我们大多数人都认为,他虽然是个名人,但一直保持着谦虚谨慎的工作态度。
 think that although he is a famous person he has always kept an attitude towards work.
- 在迈克尔低声和苏珊说话时,玛丽盯着他们。
 While Michael to Susan, Mary them.
- 他开车到火车站为朋友送行。
 He drove to the railway station to
- 威廉喜欢户外运动,并且对中国文学极感兴趣。
 William and he also has a keen interest

KEY WORD BANK

Food: bacon, barbecues, dessert, fusion, garlic, hamburger, hot dogs, lemon, mushroom, roast beef, steak, toast

Places: Big Ben, Buckingham Palace, Sydney Opera House, the Great Barrier Reef, World Trade Centre, the Statue of Liberty

Sports: American football, basketball, fishing, soccer, golf, hiking, horse-riding, rugby, sailing, surfing, tennis

Adjectives: amazing, brilliant, broad, cautious, contrary, cosy, curious, delicious, dull, familiar, foggy, informal, interesting, limited, lively, modest, muddy, multi-cultural, outgoing, poor, popular, reasonable, splendid, tasty, unfair, well-off, yummy

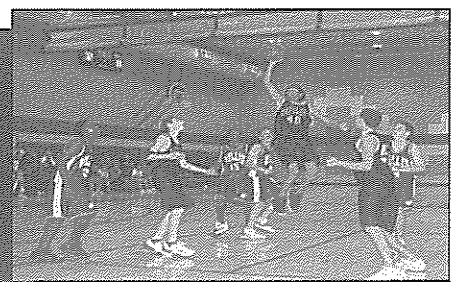
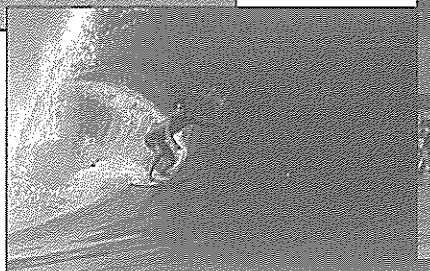
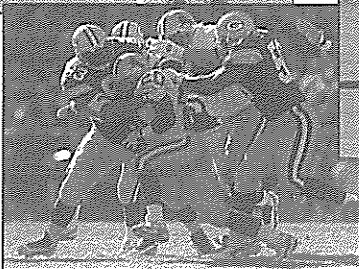
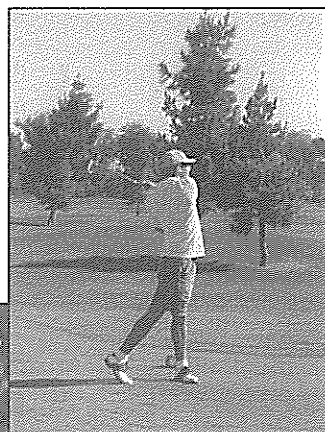
Phrasal verbs: drop (somebody) off, go back, hang on, hurry up, look after, look back, look for, look forward to, look in, look up, pick (somebody) up

Money: bank, cash, credit card, coin, notes, traveller's cheques

Australia: coal, desert, diamond, export, mine, outdoors

The UK: bed and breakfast, comfort, hotel, phone box, the underground

Being polite: Excuse me, Of course (not), Thank you, That's very kind of you, Would you mind doing ...



WORD POWER

Phrasal verbs

Read and complete the text with the verbs in the box in the correct form.

catch up with, drop (somebody) off (x2), go back, hang on, hurry up, look after, look back, look for, look forward to, look in, look up, pick (somebody) up

Jasmine, Dave, Roy and me, (I'm Laura), were all going to the cinema together. Jasmine said she would (1) *pick me up* at six. But then she had to stay in and (2) her little brother because her parents were going out. She sounded really disappointed on the phone because she had been (3) to seeing the film. But she said she would come round anyway, (4) at the cinema and then go back and babysit for her little brother. But she was late. I told Dave and Roy to go ahead on Dave's motorbike and I would (5) them when Jasmine turned up. I (6) Jasmine's mobile number in my address book. It wasn't there. I knew I had written it down on a piece of paper. I (7) the piece of paper. I couldn't find it. I (8) every drawer in every cupboard in every room. I phoned Jasmine's home number. Anthony, Jasmine's six-year-old brother, answered. He said, (9) "....." and went to ask his mother. Then he said Jasmine had just left. As soon as I hung up, Jasmine phoned. The car had broken down. Fifteen minutes later, Dave arrived. He had (10) at the cinema and then (11) to my house on the motorbike. (12) "....." he said. "We can still get there in time. Jasmine phoned me on her mobile." I had never been on a motorbike before but I loved the ride to the cinema. I (13) on that day as the start of my lifelong interest in motorbikes.

CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1 Complete these sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the brackets.

- Next time I go (flat-hunt), I must remember (take) a map. I wasted hours (look) for the address of the last flat.
- After (spend) two days (argue) about where to go for their holidays, Mr and Mrs Cao decided (stay) in Beijing.
- I'm not particularly keen on either (swim) or (cycle). What about (go) for a drive instead?
- Sam remembers his kindergarten days clearly. He remembers (go) to the kindergarten for the first time and (be) frightened and (put) his thumb in his mouth. And he remembers his teacher (tell) him (take) it out.
- One of the men suggested (take) the body out to sea, (drop) it overboard and (pretend) that it had been an accident.
- The police have put up a railing (prevent) people from (rush) out of the station and (run) across the busy main road.
- They saw a helicopter (fly) over the field. Then, to their surprise, they saw a rope (be) thrown out and three soldiers (climb) down it.
- It's no use (argue) with her. You might as well (argue) with a stone wall. She is not able (see) anyone else's point of view.

2 **Verb + -ing or infinitive**

Complete these sentences with the verbs in brackets in the correct form.

- We'll start early. I don't want to risk (arrive) in the middle of the night.
- We can't avoid (get) caught in a traffic jam.
- I want (finish) this exercise before I start the next one.
- They can't afford (buy) a new car until next year.
- She promised (meet) me outside the cinema.
- Dave needs (borrow) some CDs for the party.
- I can't stand (wait) in restaurants before the waiter comes.
- We plan (take) Grandma and Grandad with us to the zoo.
- I don't mind (do) the washing up.
- My computer keeps (lose) files.

3 **Question tags**

Complete the sentences with question tags.

- Let's go to the party, ?
- Don't forget, ?
- He isn't very friendly, ?
- You've got the tickets, ?
- He didn't know, ?
- Jane, you haven't got a moment, ?

4 Match the requests with the answers. Then decide if the people talking are: friends, strangers or neighbours.

- | Requests | Answers |
|---|---|
| 1 Excuse me, could you tell me where the cinema is? | a) Yes, I'm sure we've got enough to lend you some. |
| 2 Can you pass me that newspaper? | b) Oh sorry - I promise I'll bring it tomorrow. |
| 3 Good morning, Mr Davies. | c) I'm afraid I can't. I'm a stranger here. |
| 4 Have you still got my French dictionary? | d) OK. Here you are. |
| 5 Hello. Mum wants to know if she could borrow some milk, please. | e) Hello. Lovely day, isn't it? |

5 Choose a, b or c to finish the sentence. Only one is correct.

- 1 This is the first time
 - a I see her.
 - b I've seen her.
 - c I'm seeing her.
- 2 I couldn't understand it before but
 - a I understand it now.
 - b I've understood it now.
 - c I'm understanding it now.
- 3 The audience left the cinema after the film
 - a has finished.
 - b finishes.
 - c had finished.
- 4 You look different.
 - a You've grown taller.
 - b You were growing taller.
 - c You've been growing taller.
- 5 *Hamlet* was written
 - a by Shakespeare.
 - b with Shakespeare.
 - c for Shakespeare.
- 6 I know what we can do with the money!
 - a We're going to buy a new computer.
 - b We buy a new computer.
 - c We'll buy a new computer.
- 7 Can you identify the man in this photo?
 - a You must have seen him before.
 - b You may have seen him before.
 - c You have to see him before.
- 8 I'll give it to Mr Rogerson
 - a if I see him.
 - b if I have seen him.
 - c if I saw him.
- 9 I don't know where
 - a is Phil.
 - b Phil is.
 - c Phil.
- 10 I can't stand
 - a that I can do this much longer.
 - b to do this much longer.
 - c doing this much longer.

6 Complete the passage with the correct words below.

The first time that I ever left home was to go on holiday to America. My (1) were that the Americans would be very loud and (2) This was certainly true and I soon (3) them. However, I also met a few Americans who were shy and (4) One of the nicest people I met in America was a (5) who worked in a restaurant across the road from my hotel. I (6) into the restaurant on my first day and she was really helpful. I had never eaten (7) and eggs for breakfast before so she made me a few slices of (8) instead. She also told me where I could (9) my traveller's cheques. I didn't really know how the (10) system works in America so I asked her. She told me that the (11) in America was to tip 15% but that she didn't want me to tip her! Instead, she said that I had to join her that evening to watch her sing in her (12) ! I went along and it was one of the best nights of my holiday!

- | | | |
|----|-----------------|----------------|
| 1 | a) expectations | b) requests |
| | c) ideas | d) warnings |
| 2 | a) shy | b) lovely |
| | c) outgoing | d) outdoors |
| 3 | a) got going | b) got used to |
| | c) got into | d) got ahead |
| 4 | a) loud | b) outgoing |
| | c) modest | d) confident |
| 5 | a) waiter | b) waitress |
| | c) headmaster | d) chef |
| 6 | a) came | b) ran |
| | c) wandered | d) wondered |
| 7 | a) wine | b) beer |
| | c) food | d) bacon |
| 8 | a) toast | b) roast |
| | c) coast | d) dessert |
| 9 | a) buy | b) change |
| | c) exchange | d) pay |
| 10 | a) tipping | b) service |
| | c) tipping | d) serving |
| 11 | a) habit | b) tradition |
| | c) guest | d) custom |
| 12 | a) group | b) team |
| | c) friends | d) band |

WRITING HELP

1 AN ADVERTISEMENT FOR A GADGET (page 16)

Layout

Title

For example, *Save Time and Energy*

The problem and the solution

What problems does the gadget solve? *Do you ever feel tired when your dog wants to go for a walk?*

What does it do? *Here is the perfect solution to all your problems. The K9 exercises your dog in your own home.*

The advantages

Give information about the design/materials/uses/convenience/etc. *It is made of good quality plastic and has an attractive, modern design. The dogwalker has a reliable electric motor plus a small computer.*

The price /How you can get it

The dogwalker isn't expensive either. It is a bargain at only £39.99! Contact: Cantek Products, Whitcliffe Cottage, Orleton, Nr Ashford, Kent.

Linking (Addition)

It is made of good quality plastic and has an attractive, modern design, too. The dogwalker has a reliable electric motor plus a small computer. The dogwalker also weighs only ten kilos. The dogwalker isn't expensive either.

Useful Vocabulary

Expressions: *Here is the perfect solution to all your problems./You can use the ... to/It is made of .../It is good quality .../It is a bargain at only .../It is excellent value at ...*

Adjectives: *amazing, attractive, automatic, brilliant, cheap, compact, convenient, durable, easy (to use), exciting, fantastic, modern, perfect, relaxing, reliable, useful*

Materials: *glass, gold, metal, nylon, plastic, silver, wood*

Objects: *bracelet, camera, computer, earrings, electric motor, headphones, stereo system*

Checking

Content: Is your advertisement convincing? Can you add any useful information about it? Can you add any adjectives to describe your product?

Mistakes: Check your letter for simple mistakes.

2 A FORMAL LETTER TO A NEWSPAPER (page 30)

Layout

Your address
The date

Newspaper's name
and address

Greeting

Dear Editor, (or Dear Sir/Madam,)

Paragraph 1

Give your reason for writing.

I am writing to protest about the proposal for ...

Paragraph 2

Write about one part of the problem.

First, the government says that the new airport will bring us industry and jobs. However ...

Paragraph 3

Write about another part of the problem.

Despite what the government says, it is clear that the airport will also affect our health. Problems will increase ...

Paragraph 4

Write some suggestions for action.

I think other residents should ...

Formal ending

I look forward to reading more letters about this issue in your newspaper.

Yours faithfully,

Your signature

Print your name clearly

Useful Vocabulary

Environment: *air pollution, noise pollution, river pollution, traffic pollution*

Health: *asthma sufferers, effects on children's health, risk of diseases*

Leisure: *cinema, outdoor activities (see Module 1), sports centre, youth club*

Unemployment: *job opportunities, new jobs, training courses*

Needs: *hospital, new bus route, park, road, school*

Linking: Contrast

Contrast of two sentences:

Many people have been against the idea from the start.

Nevertheless, the government is ...

... the new airport will bring us industry and jobs. However, in our opinion, it will ruin ...

Contrast of clauses in the same sentence:

Although the airport would bring tourists, I am not sure ...

Checking

Style: Have you checked your letter for formal style? Make sure you do not:

- use contractions
- use colloquial vocabulary
- use colloquial expressions when giving opinions

Grammar: Have you checked for grammar mistakes?

3 AN INFORMAL LETTER (page 45)

Layout

Greeting Dear ...,
Introduction Say hello, ask a few personal questions and/or make a few chatty comments. <i>How are you? Did you pass the exam? I hope so. The weather here is really bad at the moment. Last week I went to ...</i>
Paragraph 1 State your main reason for writing. <i>Anyway, I'm writing to ...</i>
Paragraph 2 Finish the letter with an excuse to stop writing. <i>Well, I have to go now because ...</i>
Signing off Say goodbye and sign your name. <i>See you soon / Write back soon / Lots of love, Suzanne</i>

Useful Vocabulary

Presents: book about Britain, box of chocolates, cassette of traditional music, ornament, perfume
Music: classical, folk, heavy metal, jazz, rock, techno
Clothes: gloves, jeans, jumper, raincoat, shorts, suit, swimming costume, trainers
Places to go: art gallery, cinema, disco, football match, gym, museum, park, party, restaurant

Linking

Addition: first, also, finally
Contrast: but, however
Purpose: so that
Example: such as, for example
Reason: as, because
Time: when, while

Beginning of a sentence: Anyway, Well, Right

Checking

Layout: Have you organised your letter correctly?
Punctuation: Check your letter for full stops, capital letters and apostrophes in contractions.
Spelling: Use a dictionary to check your spelling.

Unit 12, Lesson 4, Exercise 9 (page 43)

Student A: Read the factfile. Ask your partner questions to complete it. Also, answer your partner's questions. Your partner starts.

AUSTRALIA: FACTFILE

Area: 7,682,300 sq km
Population: ___?___ million
Capital: Canberra
Official language: ___?___
Political structure: Independent constitutional monarchy
Head of State: Elizabeth II of Great Britain

HISTORY

___?___: Aborigines arrive in Australia.
16th century: Portuguese and Dutch sailors explore the Australian coast.
1770: Captain ___?___ lands in New South Wales and claims the continent for Britain.
1788: First prison colony established near Sydney in New South Wales.
1820s: Free settlers begin to arrive.
 ___?___: Gold discovered. Aborigines pushed off tribal lands by white settlers.
1901: Australia becomes independent.
World War II: Australia fights on the side of the allies against ___?___ and Germany.
2000: Olympic Games held in Sydney.

AUSTRALIA: FACTFILE
Area: ___?___ sq km
Population: 18 million
Capital: ___?___
Official language: English
Political structure: Independent constitutional monarchy
Head of State: ___?___
HISTORY
18,000 B.C.: Aborigines arrive in Australia.
 ___?___: Portuguese and Dutch sailors explore the Australian coast.
1770: Captain James Cook lands in New South Wales and claims the continent for Britain.
 ___?___ in New South Wales.
1788: First prison colony established near ___?___ in New South Wales.
1820s: Free settlers begin to arrive.
1850s: Gold discovered. Aborigines pushed off tribal lands by white settlers.
 ___?___: Australia becomes independent.
World War II: Australia fights on the side of the allies against Japan and Germany.
2000: Olympic Games held in ___?___.

Student B: Read the factfile. Ask your partner questions to complete it. Also, answer your partner's questions. You ask the first question.
Unit 12, Lesson 4, Exercise 9 (page 43)

GRAMMAR SUMMARY

1 SOME/ANY/NO; A LOT OF/MANY MUCH; THERE IS/ARE (page 9)

In English, nouns can be countable (*a dog, a table*) or uncountable (*money, water*). Countable nouns can be singular or plural (*a dog - dogs*). Uncountable nouns can only be singular (*sugar, water*).

英语的名词可分为可数名词(如: *a dog, a table*)和不可数名词(如: *money, water*)。可数名词有单、复数形式(如: *a dog - dogs*), 而不可数名词只有单数形式(如: *sugar, water*)。

Words like *some, any, no, a lot of* are called quantifiers. We use *some, any, no, a lot of* in front of countable and uncountable nouns. We usually use *some* in affirmative sentences and *any* in negative sentences.

some, any, no, a lot of 是数量词, 用在可数或不可数名词前。通常 *some* 用于肯定句, *any* 用于否定句。

I need **some** new shoes.

I don't have **any** money.

We use *much* and *a little* in front of uncountable nouns.

much 和 *a little* 用于不可数名词前。

We haven't bought **much** sugar.

There is **a little** milk left.

We use *many* and *a few* in front of plural countable nouns.

many 和 *a few* 用于可数复数名词前。

There aren't **many** quiet places nowadays.

I invited **a few** friends to my birthday party.

We use *a lot of* in front of plural and uncountable nouns.

a lot of 用于可数复数名词和不可数名词前。

A lot of people came to her party.

We've got **a lot of** homework tonight.

We use *much* and *many* mainly in negative sentences.

much 和 *many* 主要用于否定句。

Not **many** people came to her party.

We haven't got **much** homework tonight.

We use *there is/are* when we want to say that something exists.

若表示“某处有某物”时, 常用 *there is/are* 结构。

There are twenty students in our class.

2 ALL/NONE; BOTH/NEITHER (page 9)

Words like *all, none, both, neither* are called determiners. We use *all (of)* in front of plural and uncountable nouns when we are referring to each/every one of the people or things, or the complete amount.

all, none, both, neither 是限定词。 *all* 用于复数名词或不可数名词前, 表示人或物中的每一个或全部、整体。

All (of) the players are fit.

She ate **all (of)** her rice.

We use *none of* in front of plural pronouns or *the/these + plural nouns*. The verb is always positive and can either be singular or plural.

none of 用于复数名词或 *the/these/those* 等 + 集合名词前。

和 *none* 连用的动词可以是单数或复数, 但总是用肯定形式。

None of the people was/were aware of danger.

We have three sons but **none of** them lives/live nearby.

We use *both (of)* and *neither (of)* when there are two people or things.

表达两人或两物时, 用 *both of* 和 *neither of*。

Both cars were very fast.

Neither of them can swim.

3 ANOTHER, OTHER, THE OTHER, THE SECOND (page 9)

Words like *another, other, the other, the second* are called determiners. We use *another* in front of singular countable nouns to mean “one more” or “a different one”.

another, other, the other, second 是限定词。 *another* 用于单数可数名词前, 表示“又一个”或“(不同类的)另外一个, 其他一种”。

I don't like this pen. I'm going to buy **another** one.

We use *other* in front of plural nouns when we refer to “different ones”.

other 用于复数名词前, 表示“另外的”、“更多的”。

There are **other** routes to school but this is the nicest one.

4 INFINITIVES (page 13) 不定式

We use the infinitive (*to + verb*) as Subject, Predicative, Object, Object Complement, attributive and adverbial of sentences.

不定式 (*to do*) 在句中可用作主语、表语、宾语、宾语补足语、定语和状语。

It is useful **to know** how to drive.

The best way **to learn** a foreign language is **to make** friends with a foreigner.

I need **to attend** the meeting.

I didn't expect Mary **to invite** me to her birthday party.

She listens to news every day so as **to find out** what's going on.

I was disappointed **to hear** the news.

We use the infinitive with question words (*verb + question word + to do*) after certain verbs.

在特定动词后, 不定式可以和疑问词连用, 即:

verb + who/which/what/how/when... + to do.

Could you **tell me how to get** to the airport?

Have you **decided what to wear** to the interview?

I felt embarrassed when she started shouting. I didn't **know**

whether to stay or not, so I just stood there.

I **know who to turn to** for help when I'm in trouble.

Nobody told me **where to buy** the ticket.

NOTE: The negative form of the infinitive is **not to do**.

注: 不定式的否定式是 **not to do**。例如:

She seemed **not to notice** me.

We turned down the music **in order not to disturb** the

neighbours.

5 THE PASSIVE (II) (pages 22-23) 被动语态

Use 用法

We use the passive when: 被动语态可用于:

- we don't know or care who the “doer” of the action is/was.

不知道或不需要强调动作执行者时。例如:

The press conference **will be held** in the hotel lobby.

- the “doer” is obvious.
动作的执行者很明确时。例如：
*The ceremony **was reported** in the news last night.*
- the action itself is more important than who does/did it.
要强调动作本身而不是强调谁做的这件事时。例如：
*Hundreds of people **are attacked** in the streets every day.*

Sometimes we also use the passive to put more emphasis on the “doer” of the action. We add “by + noun” at the end of the sentence to say who the “doer” is/was.

有时，要强调动作执行者时（人或物），通常在句末用“by + 名词”来表示。

Manchester United were beaten by AC Milan.

Form 形式

	Present Simple 一般现在时
Active 主动	Someone regularly steals cars in this area.
Passive 被动	Cars are regularly stolen in this area.
	Past Simple 一般过去时
Active 主动	He submitted the report last Monday.
Passive 被动	The report was submitted last Monday.
	Present Continuous 现在进行时
Active 主动	They are writing the book now.
Passive 被动	The book is being written now.
	Past Continuous 过去进行时
Active 主动	They were renovating the buildings when I was there last.
Passive 被动	The buildings were being renovated when I was there last.
	Present Perfect 现在完成时
Active 主动	They have offered me a new position.
Passive 被动	I have been offered a new position.
	Past Perfect 过去完成时
Active 主动	She had booked the hotel before.
Passive 被动	The hotel had been booked before.
	will
Active 主动	I will give her the money.
Passive 被动	She will be given the money.
	can
Active 主动	Someone can easily do it.
Passive 被动	It can easily be done .
	be going to
Active 主动	They are going to cancel the trip.
Passive 被动	The trip is going to be cancelled.

6 GERUNDS (page 27) 动名词

A gerund (-ing form) acts like a noun in a sentence. It's found in places where a noun would be found. We use the gerund as subject, predicative, attributive and object (after a verb or a preposition).

动名词（-ing形式）在句中起名词的作用，可用作主语、表语、定语和宾语（用在动词或介词后）。

Smoking is a terrible habit.

The *advertising* of products and services is big business.

His hobby is *collecting stamps*.

He doesn't like my *singing*.

We are tired from *working* all day.

Where is the *publishing* house?

NOTE: Be careful not to confuse a preposition “to” with an infinitive. The gerund is used after a preposition.

注：注意不要混淆介词“to”和不定式的符号to (do)。动名词用于介词后。

I'm looking forward to *getting* your early reply.

He has got used to *living* in the cave and *enjoying* freedom.

We've got plenty of time. We don't need *to hurry*.

7 VERBS FOLLOWED BY -ING FORM OR INFINITIVE (page 37) 跟动名词或不定式作宾语的动词

Verbs followed by the infinitive 跟不定式作宾语的动词有：

afford, agree, arrange, ask, attempt, choose, decide, expect, fail, help, intend, learn, manage, offer, persuade, plan, pretend, promise, refuse, tell, wish, would like/love/prefer

Verbs followed by -ing form 跟动名词作宾语的动词有：

admit, avoid, can't help, can't stand, consider, delay, deny, dislike, enjoy, fancy, finish, give up, imagine, keep, mind, miss, put off, risk, suggest

Verbs followed by either the infinitive or -ing form:

既可跟不定式，也可跟动名词作宾语的动词有：

1) *begin, start, continue, intend*

These verbs have little or no difference in meaning when they are followed by either the infinitive or -ing form.

这些动词后跟不定式或动名词意义上区别不大，可通用。

*He started **to build/ building** his own laboratory when he was only 14.*

2) *hate, like, love, prefer*

Many liking or disliking verbs are most commonly followed by -ing form, but can also be followed by the infinitive, sometimes with slight changes of meaning.

大部分表示“喜欢”或“不喜欢”的动词常可跟动名词作宾语，也可跟不定式作宾语，但有时在含义上略有区别。

I hate driving alone on a long journey. = Driving alone on a long journey is something I don't enjoy. 独自一人长途开车不是我喜欢做的事。

He hates to tell his mother the truth. = He prefers lying to his mother. 他宁愿对妈妈撒谎。

3) *remember, forget, regret, mean, try, stop, need/want*

These verbs have different meanings when they are followed by -ing form or the infinitive.

在这些动词后用不定式还是动名词作宾语，含义不同。

remember to do something = You remember that you have to do something later. 记着—会儿得做这件事。

He didn't *remember to check* it out.

remember doing something = You remember that you did something earlier. 记得曾做过此事。

Do you *remember seeing* him there?

Grammar Summary

regret to do something = You feel sorry before you do something. 做此事前，感觉遗憾、惋惜。

I **regret to say** that the meeting wasn't successful.

regret doing something = You do something and then feel sorry about it. 做了此事后，感到懊悔。

She **regrets mentioning** it to me.

stop to do something = You interrupt an activity in order to do something else. 停下正在做的事，开始做另一件事。

They **stopped to have** a snack.

stop doing something = You are doing something and then you interrupt this activity. 停止正在做的事。

We **stopped talking** because we heard a strange noise outside.

try to do something = You make an effort to do something 努力、尽力做某事。

I **tried to ring** you but I couldn't get through.

try doing something = You do something to find out if it produces a result you want. 试着做某事，看是否可以达到预期的结果。

I'll **try baking** bread tonight.

8 PRESENT PARTICIPLES (page 41) 现在分词

The Present Participle is the -ing form of the verb. It acts as an adjective or an adverb in a sentence. We use the participles as attributive, adverbial, object complement or predicative of sentences.

现在分词，即：动词 -ing 形式，在句中起形容词或副词的作用，可用作定语、状语、表语和宾语补足语。

The **crying** child had a cut on his knee.

The market is crowded with people **trading and bargaining**.

He stood there, **wondering** what to do.

Not knowing his address and telephone number, I couldn't get in touch with him.

As I walked past the room, I heard two people **arguing**.

The football game was **exciting**.

We sometimes use the participles instead of relative and adverbial clauses. We can also use the participles instead of two main clauses joined by **and** or **but**.

有时，现在分词短语可以替代定语或状语从句。现在分词短语还可以替代 **and** 或 **but** 连接的两个并列句。

Arriving at the school, the children found it was closed. (**When they arrived** at the school, the children...)

Have you met the boss **managing the company**? (...the boss **who manages**...)

The car ran through the city, **heading** for the mountain area. (...**and headed** for...)

NOTE: The subject of the participle must also be the subject of the main verb.

注：现在分词短语作状语时，其逻辑主语也必须是句子的主语。

Carrying a large and heavy box, **she** tripped on a step and fell.

The following sentence is not possible.

Carrying a large and heavy box, **her foot** tripped on a step and fell.

MINI-GRAMMAR

1 all (of), none of

We use *all* in front of plural or uncountable nouns when we are referring to each/every one of a group or the complete amount:

all 常用在复数名词或不可数名词前，表示整体或一组中的每一个。例如：

All cars pollute the environment.

We're trying to abolish all traffic in our neighbourhood.

- We use *all* or *all of* in front of possessive adjectives and *the* + plural or uncountable noun: *all* 或 *all of* 常用在物主名词或 *the* + 复数名词或不可数名词前。例如：

She spends all (of) her money on products for her bike.

All (of) the planes were either cancelled or delayed.

- We also use *all of* in front of pronouns: *all of* 也可用在复数宾格代词前。例如：

All of them should be punished.

We use *none of* in front of plural pronouns, possessive adjectives and *the* + plural noun meaning “not any of”. The verb can be singular or plural:

none of 可用在复数宾格代词、形容词性物主代词或 *the* + 复数名词前，意为“（几个人或物中）没有一个”。*none of* 短语作主语时，谓语动词可以用单数或复数。例如：

None of them was/were arrested after the burglary.

None of the cars use/uses lead-free petrol.

We use *none of* in front of *it*. The verb is always positive and singular.

it 前也可用 *none of*，但动词总是用肯定式，并用单数形式。

He told me all the news **but none of it** was very exciting.

Do not use *none* with a verb in the negative form.

none 不能和动词的否定式连用。

2 another, other, the other/ the others

We use *another* in front of singular countable nouns when we are referring to “one more” or “a different one”:

another 用在复数名词或不可数名词前表示“（同类中的）另一个”或“（不同类中的）另外一个”。例如：

When I see a soap opera on TV, I immediately turn over to another channel.

We use *other* in front of plural nouns when we refer to people or things in addition to those already known:

other 用在复数名词前表示除已知的人或物外，所有其他的。例如：

The news is usually OK but other programmes on this channel are hopeless.

- We use *others* without a noun: *others* 表示“其他的人或物”，可单独使用。例如：

Some advertisements try to be funny, others shock people.

We use *the other* in front of singular and plural countable nouns. It means “not this one” or “the remaining one(s)”:

the other 用在单数或复数可数名词前表示“（两者中的）另一个”或“其他所有的人或物”。例如：

Manchester United played very well but the other team wasn't bad either.

The dictionaries have all been sent and the other books will go next week.

- We use *the others* without a noun:

the others 可单独使用。例如：

Two of the passengers survived the crash but the others died.

- Notice the difference between *the second* and *the other*; we use *the other* when there are two and *the second* when we list things in an order and there are more than two:

注意 *the second* 和 *the other* 的区别：*the other* 表示两者中的“另一个”；而 *the second* 则表示“（一系列人或物中的）第二个”，所谈论总数应超过了两个。例如：

The winner's score was 220 points, the second player scored 208, and the third got below 200 points.

3 both (of), either (of), neither (of)

We use *both (of)*, *either (of)* and *neither (of)* to talk about two people or things.

both (of), *either (of)*, *neither (of)*，用来谈论两个人或物。

Both is always plural: *both* 总是表达复数概念。例如：

Both brothers are reliable and hard-working.

- We can use *both* or *both of* in front of possessive adjectives and *the* + plural noun:

both, *both of* 用在形容词性物主代词和 *the* + 复数名词前。例如：

Both (of) his parents have survived two world wars.

Both (of) the twins may have been infected with HIV.

- We use *both of* in front of pronouns:

both of 用在复数宾格代词前。例如：

Both of us used to play volleyball.

- We use *either* and *neither* in front of a singular noun and with a positive verb:

either, *neither* 用在单数可数名词前，与其连用的动词要用肯定式。例如：

Either job will be suitable for him.

Neither player deserves to win.

- We use *either of* and *neither of* in front of plural pronouns, possessive adjectives and *the* + plural

nouns:

either of, *neither of* 用在复数宾格代词、形容词性物主代词和 *the* + 复数名词前。例如:

Either of them could have become the president.

She can count on ***either of her sisters***.

Either of the managers could have done the job.

Neither of us has/have been working hard.

Neither of his parents is/are going to come to his wedding.

Neither of the twins used to do a lot of sport.

Neither is a negative word. Do not use *neither* with a verb in the negative form.

neither 是否定词, 不能和否定的动词连用。

4 each (of)

We use *each (of)* to talk about two or more people or things when we think of them as separate. *Each* is always singular and is used with a singular verb:

each (of) 用来谈论两个或更多人或物中的每一个。*each* 总是表达单数概念, 只能和动词的单数形式连用。例如:

Each driver is obliged to have the lights switched on between November and March.

- We use *each of* in front of pronouns, possessive adjectives and *the* + plural nouns:
each of 可用于复数宾格代词、形容词性物主代词和 *the* + 复数名词前。例如:

Each of us were questioned by the police.

Each of her friends brought her a birthday present.

Each of the teams has its own ball to practise with.

5 a few (of), a little (of)

A few and *a little* mean the same as “some” or “not a lot/not much”.

a few 和 *a little* 含义相同, 表示“几个”、“一些”。例如:

- We can use *a few* in front of plural countable nouns only:
a few 只能用于可数的复数名词前。例如:
I've only had a few driving lessons.
- We can use *a little* in front of uncountable nouns only:
a little 只能用于不可数名词前。例如:
I need a little time to get ready.
- We use *a few of* and *a little of* in front of pronouns, possessive adjectives and *the* ... :
a few of, *a little of* 可用在宾格代词、形容词性物主代词和 *the* + 复数可数名词 (*a few of*) 或不可数名词 (*a little of*) 前。例如:
I had met a few of them before.

A few of my friends have gone on a trip round the world.

We could spend ***a little of the class money*** on charity.

6 a lot (of), lots (of)

We can use *a lot of* with plurals and uncountable nouns. It means “a large number or amount of”:

a lot of 用在可数或不可数名词前, 表示“许多的”、“大量的”。例如:

People produce ***a lot of litter***.

Did you climb ***a lot of mountains*** when you went to the Alps?

- We use *a lot* after a verb: *a lot* 可用在动词后。例如:
He promises a lot.
- We use a singular verb with an uncountable noun: *a lot of* + 不可数名词短语作主语时, 谓语动词用单数形式。例如:
A lot of money has been raised to help the flood victims.
- We use a plural verb with plural nouns: *a lot of* + 复数名词作主语时, 谓语动词用复数形式。例如:
There are a lot of problems with using solar energy on a large scale.

We can use *lots (of)* as an informal alternative to *a lot (of)*:

lots (of) 可和 *a lot (of)* 换用, 但 *lots (of)* 不如 *a lot of* 正式。例如:

He must have had lots of luck in his exams.

- We use *lots* after a verb: *lots* 可用在动词后。例如:
I'll lend you a pen – I've got lots.

7 many (of), much (of)

We use *many* in front of plural nouns and *much* in front of uncountable nouns in questions and negative sentences:

在疑问句和否定句中, *many* 用在可数名词前, *much* 用在不可数名词前。例如:

There aren't many interesting TV programmes nowadays.

How much money do you need to buy a mountain bike?

They didn't get much support from their parents.

- We use *many of* and *much of* in front of pronouns, possessive adjectives and *the*...:
many of 和 *much of* 可用在复数宾格代词、形容词性物主代词及 *the* + 可数、不可数名词前。例如:
Many of us do various extreme sports.
We didn't get much of her time.
I had heard many of the stories before.

8 more (of), most (of)

We use *more* and *most* in front of uncountable and plural nouns:

more 和 *most* 用在可数或不可数名词前。例如:

*Human beings need **more space** to survive.*

***Most explorers** write diaries or memoirs.*

- We use *more of* and *most of* in front of pronouns, possessive adjectives and *the...*:

more of 和 *most of* 用在复数宾格代词、形容词性物主代词及 *the* + 可数、不可数名词前。例如:

***Most of us** would be too scared to go on an expedition to the Pole.*

***Most of their cars** are designed for rich people.*

*Is there any **more of the chocolate cake**?*

9 some (of), any (of), no

We use *some*, *any* and *no* in front of uncountable and plural nouns:

some, *any* 和 *no* 可用在不可数名词和可数的复数名词前。例如:

*I've seen **some** interesting films recently.*

*Do you have **any news** about the earthquake?*

*There was **no time** to think.*

- We use *some of* and *any of* in front of pronouns, possessive adjectives and *the...*:
some of 和 *any of* 可用在复数宾格代词、形容词性物主代词及 *the* + 可数、不可数名词前。例如:
***Some of us** were asleep when the storm began.*
*I've read **some of his** books.*
*Was **any of it** useful?*
*We didn't enjoy **any of the** performances.*
- We often use *some* in affirmative sentences and in questions when we expect the answer "Yes":
some 用于肯定句。用于疑问句时, 我们期盼的答复是肯定的, 即 "Yes"。例如:
*I had met **some of them** earlier.*
*Would you like **some more** cake?*
- We usually use *any (of the)* in questions and negative sentences:
any (of the) 通常用于疑问句和否定句。例如:
*Are you going to visit **any historical places**?*
*I didn't use to drink **any milk** when I was a child.*
- No* means the same as "not any":
no 意为 "not any"。例如:
*I've got **no** problems at all. (I haven't got **any** problems.)*

10 Verbs followed by infinitive

跟不定式作宾语的动词

Verbs + infinitive 动词+不定式

afford, agree, choose, decide, expect, help, learn, manage, need, offer, plan, promise, refuse, want, would like/love/prefer

*He **decided to take up** bungee jumping.*

Verbs + someone + infinitive

动词 + 某人 (someone) + 不定式

advise, allow, beg, help, invite, order, tell, want, would like/love/prefer

*I **want them to tidy** their room first.*

Verbs + someone + infinitive without to

动词 + 某人 (someone) + 不带 to 的不定式

let, make

*She always **makes me** laugh.*

11 The passive 被动语态

Uses 被动语态的用法如下:

- When the doer (person or thing performing the action) is unknown:

不知道动作执行者时。例如:

*The building **has been** completely refurbished.*

- To focus on the action rather than the doer:

关注的是动作本身而不是动作执行者时。例如:

*The new policy **will be** introduced step by step.*

- To avoid a very long subject in an active sentence:

避免在肯定句中出现过长的主语, 使句子显得头重脚轻。例如:

*Princess Diana's dress **was bought** by a famous fashion designer, who wants to open a museum of celebrity clothes. (= A famous fashion designer, who wants to open a museum of celebrity clothes, **bought** Princess Diana's dress.)*

- When we want to put emphasis on the doer:

想强调动作执行者时, 用 *by* + 动作执行者来表示。例如:

*The project **is going to be** sponsored by UNESCO.*

The passive is used mainly in formal and written language. It is very typical of newspaper language.

被动语态主要用于正式用语和书面语中, 是典型的报刊用语。

Form 形式

To form the passive we use the appropriate form of *be* + third form of the verb:

被动语态由 *be* + 动词过去分词构成:

*The room **is cleaned** daily. (Present Simple)*

Mini-Grammar

*I think we **were being observed**.* (Past Continuous)
*When we arrived at the auction, the painting **had just been sold** for half a million dollars.* (Past Perfect)
*He's **going to be defeated** this time.* (be going to)
*We **will be offered** a contract for building the new shopping centre in town.* (Future)

Apart from passive forms of tenses we can use some other passive forms.

除了动词时态的被动语态外，还在其它被动语态形式。

例如：

Passive infinitive 不定式的被动语态：

*It's nice **to be taken** seriously.*

Passive gerund 动名词的被动语态：

*We liked **being praised** by the teacher.*

Passive perfect infinitive 不定式的被动完成形式：

*The train may **have been delayed** by the storm.*

I stopped running because I was out of breath.

Stop crying and tell me what's the matter.

try to do something = You make an effort to do something. 努力做某事。

I tried to run faster but I was too tired.

try doing something = You do something as an experiment to find out if it produces the result you want. 试着做某事，看其是否能产生预期的结果。

The lift stopped between floors so I tried pressing the red button to call for help.

12 Verbs followed by **-ing** form

跟动名词作宾语的动词

avoid, enjoy, consider, prefer, can't stand, don't mind, finish, adore, suggest, risk, love, like, hate

*She **suggested going** to the cinema.*

Love, like and hate can also be followed by an infinitive:

love, like 和 hate 等也可以跟不定式作宾语。例如：

*I **hate to see** her so unhappy.*

13 Verbs followed by **-ing** form or infinitive

跟动名词或不定式作宾语的动词

Some verbs have different meanings if we use them with different patterns:

有些动词跟动名词或不定式作宾语含义不同。例如：
regret to do something = You feel sorry before you do something. 做某事前，感到遗憾、惋惜。

We regret to inform you that your application wasn't successful.

regret doing something = You do something and then feel sorry about it. 做某事后感到懊悔、遗憾。

I regret going to that concert; it was so boring.

remember to do something = You remember that you have to do something later. 记着一会儿做某事。

I remembered to feed the cat but I forgot to water the plants.

remember doing something = You remember that you did something earlier. 记得曾做过某事。

I remember being here before but I don't know when it was.

stop doing something = You are doing something and interrupt this activity. 停止正在做的事。

Notes to the Texts

Unit 10 Money

Lesson 1

1. **A lot of people are determined to become a millionaire.** 许多人一心想成为百万富翁。

be determined to do 决心(做某事)……。如:

I'm determined to go and nothing will stop me. 我决心要去, 什么也拦不住我。

2. **They spend half of their time dreaming up ways of getting rich, and the rest of their time thinking about all the enjoyable things they would do once they got rich.** 他们用一半时间梦求致富的办法, 用另一半时间来考虑一旦阔绰起来要做些什么令人享受的事。

spend ... on something/spend ... (in) doing 花时间做某事。如:

They spend a lot of money on advertising. 他们在广告上花费大量金钱。

He has spent half his life writing this novel. 他把半生心血花在这本小说的写作上。

3. **But there are people who have turned their backs on their millions and found different ways to be happy in their lives.** 但是也有人把自己的百万资产置于一边, 寻求不同的人生幸福。

turn one's back on 不理睬, 拒绝。如:

He has always been kind to me. I can't just turn my back on him now that he is in trouble. 他总是对我很好, 现在他有麻烦, 我不能不理睬他。

Did she really turn her back on his proposal? 她当真拒绝了他的提议了吗?

注意: turn one's back to 的意思是“转身”、“背朝着”。如:

He turned his back to us and saw the woman. 他向我们转过身来, 看见了那个女士。

4. **He was pleased to give up the lifestyle of a rich man.** 他对放弃自己的富人生活方式感到高兴。

give up 放弃(念头、希望等)。如:

Much interested in the new idea, he gave up his own work for the time being. 这个新思想引起了他的极大兴趣, 他暂时放下了自己的工作。

He doesn't want to give up stamp collecting though it is an expensive hobby. 虽然集邮是个很费钱的爱好, 但是他还是不肯放弃。

5. **He was tired of being a person who had everything in a world where many people had nothing.** 他不再想做在许多人一无所有的情况下自己却拥有一切的那种人。

be tired of 厌倦。如:

He got tired of teaching and switched to writing stories. 他厌倦了教书, 改行写小说了。

I'm tired of your lame excuses. 我听腻了你那些站不住脚的借口。

6. **Therefore he gave away all his money to charities.** 所以他把自己的一切钱财都捐给了慈善事业。

give away 送给(人), 分发; 出卖。如:

Look through your old clothes and see if you have anything to give away. 把你的旧衣物翻一翻, 看看有没有可以送人的。

Nobody knows I've done this, so please don't give me away! 没有人知道我做了这事, 千万别把我出卖了!

7. **Charles Gray decided to drop out and has discovered that having only a little money makes you free.** 查尔斯·格雷决定退出, 他发现仅有少量的钱财可以使你自由。

drop out 退出, 不再参加, 掉队。如:

The class began with twenty students but several have dropped out within the last month. 开班时有20个学生, 但是最后一个月内有几个人退学了。

As they marched, a few got sunstruck and dropped out. 行进途中有几个人中暑退出了。

8. **I wouldn't go back to being rich for anything - no way.** 什么也不可能让我再回到富人行列中了, 决不能! 句中的to是一个介词, 后面要接名词、代词及-ing形式。类似的短语还有: look forward to, devote ... to, be used to 等。

Lesson 3

1. **Well, if buying a bag of candies or cookies doesn't appeal to you, how about buying a tree instead?** 如果你对买一袋糖果或甜点不感兴趣, 那(用这钱)买一棵树如何?

appeal to somebody 使(某人)喜欢, 吸引。如:

Does this idea appeal to you? 你喜欢这个主意吗?

The programme especially appeals to young children. 节目对年幼的儿童尤其有吸引力。

2. **Yellow River erosion** 黄河水土流失。黄河中游是黄土高原, 因暴雨集中, 植被稀疏, 土壤抗蚀性差, 而成为我国水土流失最严重的地区。由于水土流失, 黄河成为驰名世界的多泥沙河流。黄河中游黄土高原地区总面积64万平方公里, 水土流失面积43.4万平方公里, 水土流失总量每年为16亿吨, 是黄河下游洪水泥沙灾害的主要根源。

3. **You may agree with this point of view.** 你可能会同意这个观点。

agree with 赞同, 同意。如:

He is an honest man, even though I don't quite agree with him in some points. 虽然我和他在某些方面观点不同, 但(我认为)他是一个诚实的人。

I agree with him in some ways. 在某种程度上我同意他的意见。

4. **What is more, the success of the programme has greatly improved the lives of the local people.** 而且, 这个项目的成功已经大大改善了当地居民的生活。

what is more 而且, 更重要的是, 更有甚者。如:

He came home after midnight, and what's more, he was drunk. 他半夜才回家, 更有甚者, 他还喝醉了。

She admitted that she had talked to them, and what's more, she had told them about our secret discussion. 她承认她和他们谈了话, 而且, 还把我们的秘密讨论告诉了他们。

Lesson 4

1. **remote headphones** 无线耳机。一种耳机新产品, 可以在不超过几十米的范围内接收到固定的电视机或音响的声音讯号。
2. **Fujiko** 傅记电子公司。总部设在我国台湾省台北市, 建于1991年, 生产视听和家用电子产品。
3. **credit card** 信用卡。一种消费信用工具, 具有方便消费者的特点。持卡者可在指定商店购物, 无需现金结算; 或者在指定的金融机构支取现金。它具有信贷功能, 持卡者在规定期限内归还欠款, 不必支付利息, 否则须支付利息, 还要付一定手续费。国际上最流行的信用卡有万事达卡、维萨卡等。

Culture Corner

1. **the Euro** 欧元, 欧盟国家(除英国外)的货币, 它包括7种面值的纸币和8种面值的硬币。它的发行经过了3个阶段: 从1999年1月1日起, 欧元开始在现金货币之外的领域中流通。从2002年1月1日起, 欧盟国家(除英国外)正式开始兑换并全部使用欧元。从2002年7月1日起, 欧元代替了欧盟各国货币, 成为唯一法定货币。
2. **Usually, a currency is associated with one country only so it is easier to find images and symbols to put on the coins and notes.** 一般说来, 一种货币只与一个国家相关, 因此找到一种印制在硬币或纸币上的典型形象并不难。

be associated with 把……和……联系起来, 和……发生联系。如:

The name of Darwin is naturally associated with the theory of evolution. 达尔文的名字很自然地与进化论联系在一起。

I don't want to be associated with it at all. 我不想与之有任何瓜葛。

3. **However, for the Euro, twenty different countries were involved, and each country was as keen as the**

other to be presented. 但是, 欧元情况不然, 它共涉及了20个不同的国家, 每个国家又都像其他国家一样渴望出现在画面上。

involve 包含, 涉及, 参与。如:

Give an example of a dream that involved things you had done during the day. 请举一个与你白天做的事情有关的梦的例子。

I didn't know putting on a new play involved so much work. 我没想到演一场新剧要做那么多工作。

4. **Robert Kalina** 罗伯特·卡利纳, 奥地利人, 1955年出生于维也纳。他是全部7种欧元纸币的设计者。

5. **However, instead of showing real, existing structures, he used photographs to make up imaginary structures that best represented the different architectural style.** 但他没有去展现真实存在的建筑结构, 而是用照片聚合成一个想象中的能最佳代表不同建筑风格的结构图。

instead of 代替某人某事。如:

Sand now filled the wells instead of water. 井里没有水却满是沙子。

He insists that he (should) study medicine instead of law. 他坚持学医, 不学法律。

make up 创造, 编造。如:

The teacher asked the students to make up a poem about bees. 老师让学生们编一首描写蜜蜂的诗。

At the party, John made up a joke, at which people burst out laughing. 会上, 约翰编了一个笑话, 使在场的人开怀大笑。

6. **Cervantes** 塞万提斯(1547~1616), 西班牙伟大的作家、戏剧家、诗人。他的两卷本著名小说《堂吉珂德》叙述了主人公堂吉珂德拼凑了一副破盔烂甲, 骑上一匹瘦马出游的故事。

7. **Mozart** 莫扎特(1756~1791), 奥地利作曲家, 维也纳古典乐派的代表人物。莫扎特出生在一位宫廷乐师的家庭, 3岁起显露音乐才能。莫扎特一共写了约50部交响曲, 其中41部有编号。此外, 他还写了50余部各种协奏曲以及宗教音乐。

Unit 11 The Media

Lesson 1

1. **The Group of Eight** 八国集团。所谓“八国集团”是指七大工业国加上俄罗斯。在严格意义上, 它根本不是一个严密的国际组织, 而是一个不伦不类的组合。在八个国家里, 美、英、德、法、意、日是核心成员国, 正式名称是“七国集团”。1975年, 由法国首先倡议召开由西方主要发达国家参加的西方主要工业国最高级会议, 以协调经济政策, 重振西方经济。会议每年召开一次, 由七个国家轮流主持。俄罗斯1998年加入, 后改称为“八国集团”。2005年的八国集团首脑会议于7月6日至8日在

英国苏格兰首府爱丁堡市的格伦伊格尔斯庄园召开。会议主要讨论援助非洲和遏制全球变暖问题。

2. **The G8 is made up of political leaders from ...** 八国集团由……政治领导人组成。

be made up of 组成, 构成。如:

Most of the country's industry is made up of farming and mining. 农业和矿业构成这个国家产业的大部分。

The committee is made up of representatives from all the universities. 委员会由所有大学的代表组成。

3. **In the end, it came down to a choice between Paris and London.** 最后的结果是在巴黎和伦敦之间做出选择。

come down to 结果是。如:

What comes down to is a choice between cutting wages or reducing the number of staff. 结果是只能在削减工资或减员之间作一选择。

It all comes down to the matter of debt in the end. 最终的结果是债务问题。

Lesson 3

1. **Some advertisements consist of pictures or the words of experts to show people how good the products are.** 有些广告中含有一些图片或专家说的话, 告诉人们该产品如何好。

consist of 由……组成。如:

The audience consisted mainly of students. 听众主要由学生组成。

The United Kingdom consists of Great Britain and Northern Ireland. 联合王国由大不列颠和北爱尔兰组成。

2. **Modern advertisements must stand out in a world full of competition by combining the highest standards of design with ideas linked to the products to make them more attractive.** 现代的广告必须把最高水平的设计和产品理念相结合, 以增强吸引力, 这样才能在激烈的竞争中胜出。

stand out 突出。如:

He stands out for his brilliant mental powers. 他非凡的智力使他脱颖而出。

She stood out from the crowd because of her height and flaming red hair. 她在人群中很显眼, 因为她个子很高, 头发火红。

be linked to/with 与……相关联。如:

We often form adjectives by adding *-ed* to a noun.

If we use a compound adjective, the words are linked with a hyphen. 我们经常将名词后面加 *ed*, 使之成为形容词, 如果用复合形容词, 单词之间就要用连字符号 (-) 连接。

We could conclude that the two events were necessarily linked to each other. 我们可以得出结论:

两个事件是有必然联系的。

3. **By doing this, they hope to make people forget that someone is trying to sell them something!** 他们希望这样做会使人们忘记有人正在向他们推销商品!

by doing 使用某种方式或手段。如:

John greeted us by raising his hat. 约翰举起帽子向我们致意。

It can be proved by checking the newspapers or switching on the television. 这个情况可以通过查阅报纸或打开电视来证实。

They put out the fire by pouring water on it. 他们用水浇灭了火。

4. **There are public advertisements which encourage citizens to participate in improving their neighbourhood, protecting the environment, and helping other people.** 还有一些公益广告, 它们鼓励人们参与改善社区、保护环境和帮助他人的活动。

participate in 参与, 参加。如:

Japan participated in the war by sending soldiers there. 日本以派兵参战的方式卷入了那场战争。

Everyone can participate in this game. It's easy to learn. 谁都可以参加比赛, 规则很好掌握。

Lesson 4

1. **According to the research published by Leeds University yesterday, people don't mind bad language on television as long as it is not used in programmes watched by children.** 据利兹大学昨天发表的一项研究称, 电视中的不良语言, 只要不用于儿童节目, 人们并不介意。

as long as 只要。如:

As long as you can be back before 10 o'clock, you can go out. 只要你 10 点钟前能回来, 你可以外出。

As long as you accept our conditions, we'll start working immediately. 只要你答应我们的条件, 我们立即开始工作。

2. **Pulp Fiction** 《低俗小说》。美国影片, 米兰马克斯影片公司 1994 出品, 导演为昆汀·塔伦蒂诺。《低俗小说》不同于以往的犯罪片、黑帮片或惊险片, 它是对生活的一种真实提炼加工。影片的内容就是那些在街头巷尾, 众口流传的一些黑社会犯罪的故事。它们本身就是一本丰富多彩的低级小说, 不劝导犯罪, 亦不欢迎警察。

3. **Channel 4's Brookside** 英国电视 4 频道 1982 年开播的一部肥皂剧, 以其现实主义制作手法吸引了广大观众。1980 年代中期, 曾有八百万人观看了该剧展现的一个疯狂杀手的阴谋。这部电视剧的策划人是菲尔·雷蒙德。该剧于 2003 年 11 月由于观众人数的减少而停播。

4. **South Park** 《南方公园》。美国电视连续剧, 1997 年出品。在美国一播放, 就有约 540 万人观看, 每

周三晚上播放，直到现在还在播。它是一部成人动画片，以暴力、低俗的黄色笑话和讽刺名人来取悦观众。对于它的放映，虽然众说纷纭、褒贬不一，但是作为动画剪纸的形象，受到了众多影迷的欢迎。

5. **People were asked to comment on scenes from films like *Pulp Fiction*, TV series like *Channel 4's Brookside* and cartoons like *South Park*.** 调查要求观众对《低俗小说》之类的电影、4频道的《小河边》之类的电视连续剧和卡通片《南方公园》中的电影画面进行评论。

comment on 发表意见，提出看法。如：

I often wish I could comment on your articles but there is never time. 我总想评论一下你的文章，但总没有时间。

I won't comment on this matter. 我对此事不予置评（发表意见）。

6. **He praised the bravery of the astronomers who were helped out of the windows of the trolleybus by firemen.** 他赞扬了这些勇敢的天文学家，他们被消防员从电车的车窗救出来。

help out 帮忙做事，帮助克服困难。如：

Tom usually helps out on the farm after school, so you can find him there. 汤姆放学后总是在农场里帮忙，你可以在那儿找到他。

Communication Workshop

1. **I am writing to protest about the plan for a new airport.** 我写这封信就是要抗议修建新机场的计划。

protest about 抗议，提出抗议。如：

They protested about the bad food at the hotel. 他们抱怨饭店里的伙食太差。

The footballers all protested bitterly about his decision. 足球运动员们强烈反对他的决定。

2. **Many people have been against the idea from the start.** 许多人从一开始就反对这个主意。

against 顶，靠，反抗，抵制。如：

We sat on the hay with our backs against the wall. 我们背靠着墙坐在干草上。

They are having a race against time. 他们在和时间赛跑。

There are a multitude of reasons against it. 有大量反对它的理由。

3. **However, the government is planning to go ahead with the building next year.** 尽管如此，政府仍在打算明年继续建设。

go ahead with 继续干。如：

If you go ahead with this, I won't give either of you the slightest help. 如果你们继续这样干，我就不会给你们俩一丁点儿帮助。

He suggested we go ahead with the work. 他建议我们继续工作。

Culture Corner

1. **The Sun** 《太阳报》，创刊于1964年，社址在伦敦，是英国九大全国性日报之一。
2. **The Mirror** 《镜报》，1903年创刊，1985年以前名为《每日镜报》(Daily Mirror)。该报属大众报纸，读者多为小市民阶层和职业层次较低的年轻人。
3. **The Daily Mail** 《每日邮报》，1896年创刊于英国，在英国各地拥有广大的读者群。
4. **The Telegraph** 《每日电讯报》，1855年创刊，英国四家全国性“高级”日报中销量最大的报纸，以“时效性”著称。
5. **The Guardian** 《卫报》，1821年创刊于英国曼彻斯特，是英国著名的四大报纸之一。
6. **The Financial Times** 《金融时报》，1888年创刊于英国，社址在伦敦，该报在英国及西方国家影响力巨大。
7. **The Independent** 《独立报》，英国综合性大报之一。
8. **The Times** 《泰晤士报》，英国历史最悠久、影响面最大的全国性日报。1785年创刊，被《大英百科全书》誉为“世界第一报纸”。该报几度易手，1981年被澳大利亚人默多克购入国际新闻集团旗下。它的主要读者是政府官员、企业界、上层知识界，言论上倾向于保守。

Unit 12 Culture Shock

Lesson 1

1. **Do you know that almost every town in Britain has at least one Chinese restaurant?** 你知道吗？在英国几乎每个城镇至少都有一家中餐馆。

at least 至少。如：

That building must be at least 200 years old. 那座建筑至少有二百年的历史了。

Birds use at least half of the air they take in to cool their bodies. 鸟儿至少要使用它们吸入空气的一半来使自己降温。

2. **You're going to have to get used to bacon and eggs with a few slices of toast for breakfast over here, Aunt Mei.** 梅姨，你得适应这里咸肉、鸡蛋加几片烤面包的早饭。

get used to 习惯于……。如：

I've got used to the hot food here. 我已经习惯了这里辣的食物。

We have got used to going to bed late 我们已经习惯了晚睡。

3. **To avoid getting confused about the British tipping system, you need check your bill to see if a tip is included or not.** 为了避免对英国小费制度的困惑，你要查看帐单上是不是包括小费。

avoid doing something 避免做某事。如：

They all tried to avoid mentioning that name. 他

们都尽量避免提到那个名字。

I looked down to avoid meeting his eyes. 我向下看以避免看到他的眼睛。

4. **If it isn't, I suggest leaving 10% of the bill for the waiter or waitress — even a bit more if the service is good.** 如果不包括, 我建议你给服务生或服务小姐留 10% — 甚至可以再多一点儿, 假如你认为他们服务得好。

动词 suggest 作“建议”解, 直接宾语由名词或动名词充当。如:

I suggest going to Hawaii for our Christmas holiday. 我建议去夏威夷过圣诞节。

suggest 跟从句时, 从句中的谓语经常是由 should + 动词原形, 或只由动词原形构成。如:

I suggest he (should) solve the problem as soon as possible. 我建议他尽快把这个问题解决了。

5. **I think we should consider staying in the English countryside for a few nights as I know you enjoy hiking.** 我知道你喜欢远足, 我想我们应该在英国乡村住几天。

consider doing something 考虑做某事。如:

He wouldn't consider making these changes. 他根本不想考虑做出这些改变。

He considered talking to Jack in person. 他考虑亲自与杰克谈话。

6. **I have learnt which ones are tasty and safe to eat so we won't risk getting sick.** 我学会了识别哪些蘑菇好吃又安全, 我们不会冒吃了之后生病的危险。

risk doing something 冒险做某事。如:

In the strong winds, we couldn't risk putting the sails up, so we had no means of controlling the boat. 在强风中, 我们不敢冒险去升风帆, 因此我们无法控制我们的船。

They risked losing everything. 他们冒着失去一切的危险。

7. **G.K. Chesterton** G·K·切斯特顿 (1874~1936), 英国作家, 是位保守派人士, 天主教徒。他写诗、文学评论和小说。他的小说有《被称为星期四的人》和《诺丁山的拿破仑》等。

Lesson 3

1. **When I first arrived in San Francisco, I had a difficult time understanding certain aspects of the American way of doing things.** 刚到旧金山时, 有段时间我感到很难理解某些美国人的处事方式。

have a difficult time (in) doing something 有一段较为困难的时光。如:

In his second year in the university, he had a difficult time in catching up with his classmates. 他大学二年级时, 有一段时间学习有些吃力。

He had a difficult time in finding a job. 他找工作

时颇费了些周折。

2. **She said that to some American people, it sounded like I was shouting.** 她说, 在某些美国人看来, 我说话的声音听起来就像在吵架。

sound like 听起来像。如:

It sounds like a good idea. 听起来像是一个好主意。

You can eat it and you can build with it. Does this sound like some miracle material? 你可以吃它, 你也可以用它当建筑材料, 这听起来是不是像一种神奇的材料?

3. **He insisted on walking me to the bus station to see me off.** 他坚持陪我走到车站为我送行。

insist on doing 坚持要做某事。如:

He insisted on seeing me home. 他坚持送我回家。

He insisted on her staying in London. 他坚持让她呆在伦敦。

Lesson 4

1. **surfing** 冲浪, 一种休闲运动。人站在冲浪板上, 随着海边近岸波浪的涌动而在浪尖上滑行。为了始终保持对冲浪板的控制, 人必须保持平衡和一定的姿势。冲浪板大约一人高, 用轻质材料制成。冲浪运动开始流行于 1960 年代。

2. **kangaroo** 袋鼠。一种在澳大利亚和周边岛屿生活的有袋哺乳动物的总称。其中最大的是灰袋鼠和红袋鼠, 它们直立可达 2 米, 体重可达 85 公斤。最小的袋鼠体长仅 30 厘米 (不算尾巴)。

3. **They are now a minority group and most of them live in terrible conditions while the rest of us are quite well-off.** 他们现在是少数群体, 大部分人住在恶劣的环境中, 而我们这些人却很富足。

此处的 while 表示对比, 意为“而, 却”如:

Some people waste food while others don't have enough. 有些人浪费粮食, 有些人却吃不饱。

Jim likes sports while I would rather read in bed. 吉姆热衷体育, 我却宁愿躺在床上读书。

I like tea while she enjoys drinking coffee. 我喜欢茶, 她偏爱咖啡。

4. **There are loads of great places to see in Australia.** 澳大利亚有很多名胜值得一看。

loads of 许多, 大量。如:

She's got loads of money. 她有许多钱。

5. **the Great Barrier Reef** 大堡礁。世界最大的珊瑚礁生态系统, 位于澳大利亚东北海岸外, 长 2,010 公里, 大致与昆士兰州海岸平行。1975 年成立大堡礁海洋公园, 以利于保护海洋环境。1981 年被列入世界遗产名录。

6. **Ayers Rock** 艾利斯岩, 又叫 Uluru (乌鲁鲁), 是一块高 48 米, 周长 9 公里的整块岩石, 位于澳大利

亚荒僻的大陆中心。现在是一个国家公园，并被列入世界遗产名录。每年游客人数达 65 万。

Communication Workshop

Waltzing Matilda 澳大利亚的一首著名歌曲。这首歌已被传唱了一百多年，被称作澳大利亚的非正式国歌。歌词来自于帕特森（笔名为 The Banjo）的诗。

Culture Corner

1. **Aborigines** 澳大利亚的土著人。澳大利亚没有灵长类动物，所以澳大利亚的土著人不可能在当地从灵长类动物进化而来，而是从别的大陆迁徙来的。据估计，土著人的祖先最早是在 5 万多年前到达澳洲的。
2. **Lake Mungo** 芒戈湖。在澳大利亚新南威尔士州的西部，以发现三万八千年前的人类骸骨和生活遗迹而闻名。
3. **New South Wales** 新南威尔士，澳大利亚东南部的一个州。北接昆士兰州，东濒塔斯曼海，南邻维多利亚州，西连南澳洲，首府是悉尼，人口占全澳人口的十分之一，是澳大利亚经济最发达的地区之一。
4. **Some places, like Uluru, were sacred because they were associated with the “Dreamtime”, the time when the Earth was formed and cycles of life and nature begun.** 有些地方——像乌鲁鲁——曾是神圣的，因为它们与“梦想时代”相联系，那时地球正在形成，且生命和自然的周期刚刚开始。
5. **The arrival of white people gradually brought an end to the traditional Aboriginal way of life.** 白人的到来逐渐终结了传统的土著人的生活方式。
bring (put) an end to 结束，制止某事。如：
His talk brought an end to our discussion. 他的讲话结束了我们的讨论。
I am determined to put an end to all these rumours. 我决心制止这些谣言。
We must put an end to his foolish behaviour. 我们得制止他的愚蠢举动。
6. **Kakadu National Park** 卡卡杜国家公园。建于 1979 年，位于澳大利亚北部大区的达尔文市以东，总面积 2 万平方公里，是世界著名的湿地之一，已被列入世界遗产名录中。卡卡杜一词来源于在此居住过的澳大利亚土著人部落。公园内有很多土著人的岩画。
7. **In recent years, white Australians have become more sensitive to the Aborigines' situation.** 最近几年，澳大利亚白种人对于土著人的生活状况变得更敏感。

sensitive to 对……敏感，易受影响。如：
An artist is sensitive to beauty. 艺术家对美很敏

感。

Our eyes are sensitive to light. 我们的眼睛对光线很敏感。

Literature Spot 4

1. **John Steinbeck** 约翰·斯坦贝克 (1902 ~ 1968)。美国小说家。1902 年 2 月 27 日生于加利福尼亚州蒙特雷县塞利纳斯镇一个面粉厂主家庭。斯坦贝克于 1962 年获得诺贝尔文学奖，1964 年获得美国总统自由勋章。1968 年 12 月 20 日因心脏病逝于纽约。
2. **depression of the 1930s** 20 世纪 30 年代的经济大萧条。从 1929 年开始，美国发生了由股市崩盘引起的经济大萧条。其间，生产急剧减少，市场萎缩，失业增加。在萧条最严重的 1933 年，美国的失业大军达一千五百万人，占当时就业总人口的四分之一。经济大萧条导致了美国政权的更迭，在任总统胡佛下台，被民主党的罗斯福取代。罗斯福实行“新政”，大力扩大政府投资，经济大萧条才于 1940 年初结束。

Vocabulary in Each Unit

(标*号的词为非课程标准词)

Learning to learn

motivate /'məʊtɪveɪt/ vt. 使有动机, 促使, 激发	(4)
motivation /'məʊtɪ'veɪʃən/ n. 动力, 诱因	(4)
technique /tek'ni:k/ n. 技术, 技巧	(4)
native /'neɪtɪv/ adj. 出生地的, 本土的	(4)
fluently /'flu:əntli/ adv. 流利地	(4)
achievement /ə'tʃi:vmənt/ n. 成就, 完成	(4)
put off 推迟	(4)
percentage /pə'sentɪdʒ/ n. 百分比, 百分率	(5)
exist /ɪg'zɪst/ vi. 存在, 生存	(5)
billion /'bɪljən/ n. 十亿	(5)
at present 目前, 现在	(5)
variety /və'reɪətɪ/ n. 多样化, 多样性	(5)
*alien /'eɪlɪən/ n. 外星人 adj. 外国的, 异族的	(5)
bow /bau/ vi. 鞠躬; 点头	(5)
passer-by /pɑ:sə'baɪ/ n. 经过的人, 过路人	(5)
*applause /ə'plɔ:z/ n. 鼓掌, 喝彩	(5)
*Latin /'lætɪn/ n. 拉丁语; 拉丁系语言	(6)
*Roman /'rəʊmən/ 古罗马人	(6)
defeat /dɪ'fi:t/ vt. 战胜, 击败	(6)

Unit 10

Warm-up

earn /ɜ:n/ vt. 挣得, 赚得	(7)
wallet /'wɒlɪt/ n. 皮夹子, 钱包	(7)
out of work 失业	(7)
*obsess /əb'ses/ vt. 使着迷	(7)

Lesson 1

determine /dɪ'tɜ:mɪn/ vt. 确定, 决定	(8)
*determined /dɪ'tɜ:mɪnd/ adj. 有决心的	(8)
enjoyable /ɪn'dʒɔɪəbəl/ adj. 使人快乐的	(8)
second-hand adj. 旧的, 用过的, 二手的	(8)
concern /kən'sɜ:n/ vt. 使忧虑; 与……相关	(8)
*concerned /kən'sɜ:nd/ (about) adj. 担心的	(8)
hardworking /'hɑ:dwɜ:kɪŋ/ adj. 勤奋的	(8)
dormitory /'dɔ:mɪtəri/ n. 寝室, 宿舍	(8)
pleased /pli:zd/ adj. 高兴的, 满意的	(8)
give away 赠送; 泄露(秘密)	(8)
aware /ə'weə/ adj. 知道的, 意识到的	(8)
drop out 退出, 退学;	(8)
businessman /'bɪznɪsmən/ n. 商人, 实业家	(8)
stove /stəʊv/ n. 炉子	(8)
drunk /drʌŋk/ adj. (酒) 醉的	(8)
journalist /'dʒɜ:nəlɪst/ n. 新闻工作者, 记者	(9)
greedy /'gri:di/ adj. 贪婪的, 贪心的	(9)
popcorn /'pɒpkɔ:n/ n. 爆玉米花	(9)

cigarette /sɪgə'ret/ n. 香烟	(9)
*resolution /,rezə'lju:ʃən/ n. 决心要做的事	(9)
rude /ru:d/ adj. 粗鲁的, 无礼的	(9)
armchair /'ɑ:mtʃeə/ n. 扶手椅	(9)
carpet /'kɑ:pɪt/ n. 地毯	(9)
vase /vɑ:z/ n. 花瓶	(9)

Lesson 2

bargain /'bɑ:gɪn/ n. & vi. 讨价还价; 便宜货	(10)
cash /kæʃ/ n. 现金, 现款	(10)
product /'prɒdʌkt/ n. 产品; 出品	(10)
fax /fæks/ n. 传真	(10)
scarf /skɑ:f/ n. 围巾, 头巾, 披巾	(10)
necklace /'nekls/ n. 项链, 项圈	(10)
enthusiastic /ɪn,θju:zɪ'æstɪk/ adj. 很感兴趣的, 热情的	(10)
ashamed /ə'ʃeɪmd/ adj. 羞耻的, 惭愧的	(10)
firm /fɜ:m/ adj. 坚定的; 稳固的	(10)
aggressive adj. /ə'gresɪv/ adj. 好斗的; 有进取心的	(10)
groceries /'grəʊsərɪz/ n. 食品杂货	(10)
clothing /'kləʊðɪŋ/ n. 衣服	(10)
annoy /ə'noɪ/ vt. 使烦恼, 打搅	(10)
salesgirl /'seɪlɪzɜ:l/ n. 女售货员	(11)
salesman /'seɪlzmən/ n. 男售货员, 男推销员	(11)
blouse /blauz/ n. 女衬衫	(11)
boot /bu:t/ n. 长筒靴	(11)
leather /'leðə/ n. 皮革	(11)
vest /vest/ n. 内衣, 汗背心	(11)
comment /'kɒment/ vi. & vt. 评论	(11)

Lesson 3

amusement /ə'mju:zmənt/ n. 乐趣, 娱乐活动	(12)
cookie /'kuki/ n. 饼干, 小点心	(12)
appeal /ə'pi:l/ vi. 吸引, 引起兴趣; 呼吁, 恳求	(12)
approximately /ə'prɒksɪmɪtli/ adv. 近似地, 大约地	(12)
soil /sɔɪl/ n. 泥土, 土壤	(12)
contain /kən'teɪn/ vt. 包含, 含有	(12)
balance /'bæləns/ n. 平衡	(12)
remove /rɪ'mu:v/ vt. 移开, 挪走	(12)
*erosion /ɪ'rəʊzən/ n. 侵蚀; (土壤) 流失	(12)
importance /ɪm'pɔ:təns/ n. 重要(性)	(12)
crop /krɒp/ n. 农作物, 庄稼	(12)
*economy /ɪ'kɒnəmi/ n. 经济	(12)
puzzle /'pʌzəl/ vt. 使困惑	(12)
*puzzled /'pʌzəld/ adj. 困惑的	(12)
valley /'væli/ n. 谷, 山谷	(12)
homeland /'həʊmlænd/ n. 家乡; 祖国	(12)
motherland /'mʌðəlænd/ n. 祖国; 家乡	(13)

northeast /ˌnɔːθ'iːst/ *n.* 东北, 东北方 (37)
 physician /fɪ'ziʃən/ *n.* 内科医生 (37)
 book /buk/ *vt.* 预约, 预订 (37)

Lesson 2

manners /'mænəz/ *n.* 礼貌 (38)
 modest /'mɒdɪst/ *adj.* 谦虚的; 适度的 (38)
 indicate /'ɪndɪkeɪt/ *vt.* 表明; 表示 (38)
 eastern /'iːstən/ *adj.* 东方国家的; 东部的 (38)
 curiously /'kjʊəriəsli/ *adv.* 奇怪地; 好奇地 (38)
 movement /'muːvmənt/ *n.* 动作; 活动 (38)
 lemon /'lemən/ *n.* 柠檬 (38)
 *informal /ɪn'fɔːməl/ *adj.* 非正式的 (38)
 flashlight /'flæʃlaɪt/ *n.* 手电筒 (38)
 cave /keɪv/ *n.* 洞穴, 洞窟 (38)
 cosy /'kəʊzi/ *adj.* 温暖舒适的 (38)
 novel /'nɒvəl/ *n.* (长篇) 小说 (38)
 circus /'sɜːkəs/ *n.* 马戏场 (38)
 lift /lɪft/ *n.* 搭车 (38)
 give ... a lift 让……搭车 (38)
 schoolmate /'skuːlmeɪt/ *n.* 同学 (38)
 headmaster /'hed'mɑːstə/ *n.* 校长 (38)
 jeep /dʒiːp/ *n.* 吉普车 (38)
 blanket /'blæŋkɪt/ *n.* 毛毡, 毯子 (38)
 sheet /ʃiːt/ *n.* 床单, 被单 (38)
 request /rɪ'kwest/ *n.* 请求 (39)
 parcel /'pɑːsəl/ *n.* 邮包, 包裹 (39)
 handkerchief /'hæŋkətʃɪf/ *n.* 手帕, 纸巾 (39)
 canteen /kæn'tiːn/ *n.* 食堂, 餐厅 (39)
 mailbox /'meɪlbɒks/ *n.* 信箱, 邮筒 (39)
 twin /twɪn/ *adj.* 孪生之一的 *n.* 双胞胎之一 (39)
 courtyard /'kɔːtjɑːd/ *n.* 庭院, 院子 (39)

Lesson 3

familiar /fə'mɪlə/ *adj.* 熟悉的, 常见的 (40)
 arrival /ə'reɪvəl/ *n.* 到达, 抵达 (40)
 aspect /'æspekt/ *n.* 方面 (40)
 splendid /'splendɪd/ *adj.* 极佳的, 非常好的; 壮观的 (40)
 cocoa /'kəʊkəʊ/ *n.* 可可饮料, 可可粉 (40)
 outgoing /ˌaʊt'gəʊɪŋ/ *adj.* 友好的, 乐于交友的 (40)
 cautious /'kɔːʃəs/ *adj.* 小心翼翼的, 谨慎的 (40)
 dessert /dɪ'zɜːt/ *n.* (正餐最后的) 甜食, 甜点心 (40)
 stare /steə/ *vi.* 盯着看, 凝视 (40)
 whisper /'wɪspə/ *vi.* 低语, 耳语 (40)
 *custom /'kʌstəm/ *n.* 习俗, 风俗 (40)
 appetite /'æpɪtaɪt/ *n.* 食欲, 胃口 (40)
 yummy /'jʌmi/ *adj.* 美味的 (40)
 spoken /'spəʊkən/ *adj.* 口头的 (40)
 see ... off 给(某人)送行 (40)
 fur /fɜː/ *n.* 毛皮, 浓密的软毛 (40)
 conduct /kən'dʌkt/ *vt.* 指挥(歌唱或音乐演奏); 实施 (41)

band /bænd/ *n.* 乐队 (41)
 burglar /'bɜːglə/ *n.* (潜入住宅或商店的)窃贼 (41)
 bark /bɑːk/ *vi.* 吠, 叫, 吼 (41)
 injure /'ɪndʒə/ *vt.* 伤害 (41)
 educator /'edʒʊkətə/ *n.* 教育者 (41)
 erupt /ɪ'rʌpt/ *vi.* 爆发, 喷发 (41)
 dinosaur /'daɪnəsɔː/ *n.* 恐龙 (41)
 detective /dɪ'tektɪv/ *n.* 侦探 (41)
 earthquake /'ɜːθkweɪk/ *n.* 地震 (41)

Lesson 4

acre /'eɪkə/ *n.* 英亩 (42)
 belong /bɪ'lɒŋ/ *vi.* 适应; 属于 (42)
 attach /ə'tætʃ/ *vt.* 喜欢, 依恋; 系, 固定 (42)
 birthplace /'bɜːθpleɪs/ *n.* 出生地 (42)
 chef /ʃef/ *n.* 厨师长, 主厨 (42)
 *fusion /'fjuːʒən/ *n.* 融合, 熔化 (42)
 vast /vɑːst/ *adj.* 巨大的, 广阔的 (42)
 export /ɪk'spɔːt/ *vt.* 出口, 输出 (42)
 fond /fɒnd/ *adj.* 喜爱 (42)
 outdoors /ˌaʊt'dɔːz/ *adv.* 在户外, 在野外 (42)
 literature /'lɪtərətʃə/ *n.* 文学 (42)
 contrary /'kɒntrəri/ *adj.* 相反的 (42)
 broad /brɔːd/ *adj.* 各种各样的; 广阔的 (42)
 bear /beə/ *vt.* 携带; 容忍 (42)
 minority /maɪ'nɔːrɪti/ *n.* 少数; 少数民族 (42)
 *well-off /ˌwel'ɒf/ *adj.* 富有的 (42)
 unfair /ˌʌn'feə/ *adj.* 不公平的 (42)
 forgive /fə'gɪv/ *vt.* 宽恕, 饶恕 (42)
 preview /'priːvjʊː/ *n.* 预告; 预展, 预演 (42)
 dusk /dʌsk/ *n.* 黄昏, 薄暮 (42)
 *multi-cultural /ˌmʌltɪ'kʌltʃərəl/ *adj.* 多种文化的 (43)
 spot /spɒt/ *n.* 地点; 点; 斑点 (43)

Communication Workshop

garlic /'gɑːlɪk/ *n.* 蒜, 大蒜 (44)
 apron /'eɪprən/ *n.* 围裙, 围腰布 (44)
 *ashtray /'æʃ.treɪ/ *n.* 烟灰缸 (44)
 cassette /kə'set/ *n.* 盒式录音带 (44)
 comb /kəʊm/ *n.* 梳子 (44)
 scissors /'sɪzəz/ *n.* 剪刀 (44)
 dustbin /'dʌstbɪn/ *n.* 垃圾箱 (45)
 addition /ə'dɪʃən/ *n.* 相加, 增加物 (45)
 *contrast /'kɒntrɑːst/ *n.* 差异, 差别 (45)

Names

Charles Gray /tʃɑːlz greɪ/ 查尔斯·格雷 (8)
 Angus Deayton /'æŋɡəs deɪtən/ 安格斯·戴伊顿 (8)
 Helen Cooper /'helən 'kuːpə/ 海伦·库珀 (10)
 Gordon Selfridge /'gɔːdn 'selfrɪdʒ/ 戈登·塞弗里奇 (11)
 Alan Meyer /'ælən 'meɪə/ 艾伦·梅耶 (15)

Tony /'təʊni/ 托尼	(21)	The River Thames 泰晤士河	(35)
Janet /'dʒænit/ 珍妮特	(21)	The Statue of Liberty 自由女神像	(35)
Steven Spielberg /'sti:v n 'spi:l bæg/ 斯蒂文·斯皮尔伯格	(21)	the Great Barrier Reef 大堡礁	(35)
Michael Owen /'mɑ:k l 'əʊwən/ 迈克尔·欧文	(21)	Utrecht /'ju:trekt/ University 乌特列支大学 (荷兰)	(38)
William /'wɪljəm/ 威廉	(23)	Melbourne /'melbən/ 墨尔本	(42)
Lindbrow /'lɪndbrəʊ/ 林伯劳	(24)	Athens /'æθɪnz/ 雅典	(42)
Diana /daɪ'æne/ 黛安娜	(24)		
James /dʒeɪmz/ 詹姆斯	(25)		
Jamie /'dʒeɪmi/ 杰米	(25)		
Janice Jones /'dʒænis 'dʒəʊs/ 贾尼斯·琼斯	(25)		
John Lennon /'dʒɒn 'lenən/ 约翰·列农	(25)		
Alan /'ælən/ 艾伦	(27)		
Peter Moore /'pi:tə 'muə/ 彼得·摩尔	(28)		
Susan Bold /'su:zn bæʊld/ 苏珊·博德	(28)		
Lillian Derbyshire /'lɪlɪən 'dɑ:bɪʃə/ 莉莉安·德比希尔	(28)		
Shonda /'ʃɒndə/ 肖恩达	(28)		
Shelley /'ʃeli/ 谢莉	(28)		
Sherry /'ʃeri/ 谢瑞	(28)		
Shirin /'ʃɪrɪn/ 舍瑞	(28)		
James Cameron /dʒeɪmz 'kæməɾən/ 詹姆斯·卡梅伦	(29)		
Steve Morgan /sti:v 'mɔ:ɡən/ 史蒂夫·摩根	(30)		
Norma Jean /'nɔ:mə dʒi:n/ 诺玛·吉安	(31)		
Marilyn Monroe /'mæriəlɪn mən'rəʊ/ 玛丽莲·梦露	(31)		
G. K. Chesterton /'tʃestətən/ 切斯特顿	(37)		
Christina /krɪs'ti:nə/ 克里斯蒂娜	(38)		
Davis /'deɪvɪs/ 戴维斯	(38)		
Jan Groot /dʒæn gru:t/ 詹·格鲁特	(38)		
Pete /pi:t/ 皮特	(39)		
Anne /æn/ 安妮	(39)		
Martin /'mɑ:tɪn/ 马丁	(40)		
Tina /'ti:nə/ 蒂娜	(40)		
George /dʒɔ:dʒ/ 乔治	(40)		
Fiona /fi'əʊnə/ 菲奥纳	(42)		
Barry Humphries /'bæri 'hʌmfri:s/ 巴里·汉弗雷斯	(43)		
Weller /'welə/ 维勒	(44)		

Places

Liverpool /'lɪvəpu:l/ 利物浦	(21)
Manchester United /'mæntʃɪstə jʊ'nartɪd/ 曼彻斯特联队	(21)
Singapore /,sɪŋgə'pɔ:/ 新加坡	(23)
Moscow /'mɒskəʊ/ 莫斯科	(23)
Madrid /mæ'drɪd/ 马德里	(23)
Leeds University 利兹大学 (英国)	(28)
Kingston /'kɪŋstən/ 肯斯敦	(28)
Gorton /'gɔ:tən/ 高顿	(28)
Big Ben 大本钟	(35)

Word List

(标*号的词为非课程标准词)

A

absorb /əb'sɔ:b/ *vt.* 理解, 掌握; 吸收
achievement /ə'tʃi:vmənt/ *n.* 成就, 完成
acre /'eɪkə/ *n.* 英亩
addition /ə'dɪʃən/ *n.* 相加, 增加物
administration /əd'mɪnɪ'streɪʃən/ *n.* 管理, 行政
advance /əd'vɑ:ns/ *vi.* 前进, 取得进展
*advanced /əd'vɑ:nst/ *adj.* 高级的, 先进的
advertise /'ædvətaɪz/ *vt.* 为……做广告, 登广告
advertiser /'ædvətəɪzə/ *n.* 广告人
*advertising /'ædvətəɪzɪŋ/ *n.* 广告活动; 广告业
affair /ə'feə/ *n.* 事情, 事件
agenda /ə'dʒendə/ *n.* 议程, 议事日程
aggressive /ə'ɡresɪv/ *adj.* 好斗的; 有进取心的
agony /'ægəni/ *n.* 极大的痛苦
ahead /ə'hed/ *adv.* 在前面
AIDS /eɪdz/ *n.* 艾滋病
*alien /'eɪlɪən/ *n.* 外星人 *adj.* 外国的, 异族的
ambulance /'æmbjʊləns/ *n.* 救护车
amusement /ə'mju:zmənt/ *n.* 乐趣, 娱乐活动
analyse /'ænaləɪz/ *vt.* 分析
analysis /ə'nælɪsɪs/ *n.* 分析
ankle /'æŋkəl/ *n.* 脚踝
announce /ə'naʊns/ *vt.* 宣布, 宣告
annoy /ə'nɔɪ/ *vt.* 使烦恼, 打搅
anyhow /'enihaʊ/ *adv.* 总之, 反正; 不管怎样
apology /ə'pɒlədʒi/ *n.* 道歉, 认错
appeal /ə'pi:l/ *vi.* 吸引, 引起兴趣; 呼吁, 恳求
appetite /'æprɪtaɪt/ *n.* 食欲, 胃口
*applause /ə'plɔ:z/ *n.* 鼓掌, 喝彩
application /,æplɪ'keɪʃən/ *n.* 申请(书); 应用
approach /ə'prəʊtʃ/ *n.* 方法, 方式
approximately /ə'prɒksɪmɪtli/ *adv.* 近似地, 大约地
apron /'eɪprən/ *n.* 围裙, 围腰布
argument /'ɑ:gjʊmənt/ *n.* 争论; 理由
arise /ə'raɪz/ *vi.* 发生, 出现
armchair /'ɑ:mtʃeə/ *n.* 扶手椅
arrival /ə'raɪvəl/ *n.* 到达, 抵达
as long as 只要
*ashtray /'æʃ.treɪ/ *n.* 烟灰缸
ashamed /ə'ʃeɪmd/ *adj.* 羞耻的, 惭愧的
aspect /'æspekt/ *n.* 方面
astronomer /ə'strɒnəmə/ *n.* 天文学家
at present 目前, 现在
attach /ə'tætʃ/ *vt.* 喜欢, 依恋; 系, 固定
attempt /ə'tempt/ *vt.* 尝试, 试图
attitude /'ætɪtju:d/ *n.* 态度, 看法

aware /ə'weə/ *adj.* 知道的, 意识到的

B

bacon /'beɪkən/ *n.* 腌猪肉, 熏猪肉
balance /'bæləns/ *n.* 平衡
band /bænd/ *n.* 乐队
bargain /'bɑ:gɪn/ *n. & vi.* 讨价还价; 便宜货
bark /bɑ:k/ *vi.* 吠, 叫, 吼
bath /bɑ:θ/ *n.* 浴缸; 洗澡
bear /beə/ *vt.* 携带; 容忍
beer /bɪə/ *n.* 啤酒
beg /beg/ *vt.* 乞讨; 恳求
behave /bɪ'heɪv/ *vi.* 举止, 表现
belief /bɪ'li:f/ *n.* 信仰; 信心; 信任
belong /bɪ'lɒŋ/ *vi.* 适应; 属于
billion /'bɪljən/ *n.* 十亿
birthplace /'bɜ:θpleɪs/ *n.* 出生地
blame /bleɪm/ *vi.* 责怪, 归咎于
blanket /'blæŋkɪt/ *n.* 毛毯, 毯子
blouse /blauz/ *n.* 女衬衫
bomb /bɒm/ *n.* 炸弹
book /buk/ *vt.* 预约, 预订
boom /bu:m/ *n.* 迅速增长
boot /bu:t/ *n.* 长筒靴
bow /bau/ *vi.* 鞠躬; 点头
brand /brænd/ *n.* 商标, 牌子
bravery /'breɪvəri/ *n.* 勇敢
brief /bri:f/ *adj.* 短暂的, 简短的
broad /brɔ:d/ *adj.* 各种各样的; 广阔的
budget /'bʌdʒɪt/ *n.* 预算
burglar /'bɜ:glə/ *n.* (潜入住宅或商店的) 窃贼
bush /buʃ/ *n.* 灌木, 矮树
businessman /'bɪznɪsmən/ *n.* 商人, 实业家

C

canteen /kæn'ti:n/ *n.* 食堂, 餐厅
carpet /'kɑ:pɪt/ *n.* 地毯
cash /kæʃ/ *n.* 现金, 现款
cassette /kə'set/ *n.* 盒式录音带
cautious /'kɔ:ʃəs/ *adj.* 小心翼翼的, 谨慎的
cave /keɪv/ *n.* 洞穴, 洞窟
channel /'tʃænəl/ *n.* (电视或电台的) 频道
chat /tʃæt/ *n.* 闲谈, 聊天
chef /ʃef/ *n.* 厨师长, 主厨
cheque /tʃek/ *n.* 支票
cigarette /,sɪgə'ret/ *n.* 香烟
circus /'sɜ:kəs/ *n.* 马戏场

citizen /'sɪtɪzən/ *n.* 公民; 市民
classic /'klæsɪk/ *adj.* 传统的, 经典的
cleaner /'kli:nə/ *n.* 清洁剂; 清洁工人
clothing /'kləʊðɪŋ/ *n.* 衣服
cocoa /'kəʊkəʊ/ *n.* 可可饮料, 可可粉
comb /kəʊm/ *n.* 梳子
comment /'kɒment/ *vi.* & *vt.* 评论
committee /kə'mɪti/ *n.* 委员会
compliment /'kɒmplɪmənt/ *vt.* 夸奖, 称赞
concept /'kɒnsept/ *n.* 概念; 观念 相关
concern /kən'sɜ:n/ *vt.* 使忧虑; 与……心的
*concerned /kən'sɜ:nd/ (about) *adj.* 担
conclude /kən'klu:d/ *vt.* 得出结论; 结束 (); 实施
conduct /kən'dʌkt/ *vt.* 指挥 (歌唱或音乐演奏
consideration /kən,sɪdə'reɪʃən/

n. (作计划或决定时) 必须考虑的事

consist of 由……组成

*contact /'kɒntækt/ *vt.* & *n.* 联系, 接触

contain /kən'teɪn/ *vt.* 包含, 含有

contemporary /kən'tempərəri/ *adj.* 当代的

contrary /'kɒntrəri/ *adj.* 相反的

*contrast /'kɒntrɑ:st/ *n.* 差异, 差别 捐助

contribution /,kɒntri'bju:ʃən/ *n.* 贡献,

cookie /'kuki/ *n.* 饼干, 小点心

corporation /,kɔ:pə'reɪʃən/ *n.* 公司

cosy /'kəʊzi/ *adj.* 温暖舒适的

courtyard /'kɔ:tjɑ:d/ *n.* 庭院, 院子

crop /krɒp/ *n.* 农作物, 庄稼

curiously /'kjʊəriəsli/ *adv.* 奇怪地; 好奇地

*current /'kʌrənt/ *adj.* 当前的, 现在的

*custom /'kʌstəm/ *n.* 习俗, 风俗

D

debt /det/ *n.* 债务, 欠款

defeat /dɪ'fi:t/ 战胜, 击败

defend /dɪ'fend/ *vt.* 为……辩解; 保卫

delighted /dɪ'lartɪd/ *adj.* 高兴的, 愉快的

demand /dɪ'mɑ:nd/ *vt.* 要求, 请求

dessert /dɪ'zɜ:t/ *n.* (正餐最后的) 甜食, 甜点心

detective /dɪ'tektɪv/ *n.* 侦探

determine /dɪ'tɜ:mɪn/ *vt.* 确定, 决定

*determined /dɪ'tɜ:mɪnd/ *adj.* 有决心的

dinosaur /'daɪnəsɔ:/ *n.* 恐龙

disagreement /,dɪsə'gri:mənt/ *n.* 意见不一, 分歧

disk /dɪsk/ *n.* 磁盘

dislike /dɪs'lʌɪk/ *vt.* 不喜爱, 厌恶

distinction /dɪ'stɪŋkʃən/ *n.* 殊荣; 特质; 区别

district /'dɪstrɪkt/ *n.* 区, 行政区

dormitory /'dɔ:mɪtəri/ *n.* 寝室, 宿舍

draining /'dreɪnɪŋ/ *adj.* 使人精疲力竭的

drop out 退出; 退学

drunk /drʌŋk/ *adj.* (酒) 醉的

dusk /dʌsk/ *n.* 黄昏, 薄暮

dustbin /'dʌstbɪn/ *n.* 垃圾筒

E

earn /ɜ:n/ *vt.* 挣得, 赚得

earthquake /'ɜ:θkweɪk/ *n.* 地震

eastern /'i:stən/ *adj.* 东方国家的; 东部的

*economy /'ɪkənəmi/ *n.* 经济

editor /'edɪtə/ *n.* 编辑; 剪辑者

educator /'edʒukətə/ *n.* 教育者

electric /'ɪlektrɪk/ *adj.* 与电有关的, 用电的

electricity /'ɪlek'trɪsɪti/ *n.* 电

employ /ɪm'plɔɪ/ *vt.* 雇用

encouragement /ɪn'kʌrɪdʒmənt/ *n.* 鼓励

enjoyable /ɪn'dʒɔɪəbəl/ *adj.* 使人快乐的

enthusiastic /ɪnθju:zɪ'æstɪk/ *adj.* 很感兴趣的, 热情的

environmental /ɪn,vaiərən'mentl/ *adj.* 自然环境的

*erosion /'ɪrəʊzən/ *n.* 侵蚀; (土壤) 流失

erupt /ɪ'rʌpt/ *vi.* 爆发, 喷发

evidence /'evɪdəns/ *n.* 证明, 证据

exchange /ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ/ *vt.* 兑换, 交换

*ex-husband *n.* 前夫

exist /ɪg'zɪst/ *vi.* 存在, 生存

expectation /,ekspek'teɪʃən/ *n.* 期待的事物, 预期

explanation /,eksplə'neɪʃən/ *n.* 解释, 说明

explode /ɪk'spləʊd/ *vt.* 爆炸

export /'eksɔ:t/ *vt.* 出口, 输出

F

faithfully /'feɪθfəli/ *adv.* 忠实地, 真诚地

false /fə:ls/ *adj.* 不真诚的; 错误的

familiar /fə'mɪlə/ *adj.* 熟悉的, 常见的

favour /'feɪvə/ *n.* 赞同; 恩惠

fax /fæks/ *n.* 传真

fiction /'fɪkʃən/ *n.* 小说, 虚构的事

firm /fɜ:m/ *adj.* 坚定的; 稳固的

flashlight /'flæʃlaɪt/ *n.* 手电筒

fluently /'flu:əntli/ *adv.* 流利地

fog /fɒg/ *n.* 雾

foggy /'fɒgi/ *adj.* 多雾的

fond /fɒnd/ *adj.* 喜爱

forgive /fə'gɪv/ *vt.* 宽恕, 饶恕

freedom /'fri:dəm/ *n.* 自由

fur /fɜ:/ *n.* 毛皮, 浓密的软毛

*fusion /'fju:zən/ *n.* 融合, 熔化

G

*gadget /'gædʒɪt/ *n.* 小巧的装置; 小玩意儿
garlic /'gɑ:lɪk/ *n.* 蒜, 大蒜
get used to 习惯于
give ... a lift 让……搭车
give away 赠送; 泄露(秘密)
go ahead with 开始做, 着手干
greedy /'gri:di/ *adj.* 贪婪的, 贪心的
*greengrocer /'gri:ngrəʊsə/ *n.* 蔬菜水果商
groceries /'grəʊsəriz/ *n.* 食品杂货

H

handkerchief /'hæŋkətʃɪf/ *n.* 手帕, 纸巾
hardworking /'hɑ:dwɜ:kɪŋ/ *adj.* 勤奋的
harmful /'hɑ:mfəl/ *adj.* 有害的
headmaster /'hed'mɑ:stə/ *n.* 校长
headphone /'hedfəʊn/ *n.* 头戴式受话机, 耳机
hire /haɪə/ *vt.* 租用; 雇用
homeland /'həʊmlænd/ *n.* 家乡; 祖国
host /həʊst/ *n.* 主办(国/城市/机构); 主人; *vt.* 主办
humour /'hju:mə/ *n.* 幽默

I

importance /ɪm'pɔ:təns/ *n.* 重要(性)
in favour of 支持某事物, 赞同
incident /'ɪnsɪdənt/ *n.* 事件
*incredibly /ɪn'kredəbli/ *adv.* 难以置信地
indicate /'ɪndɪkeɪt/ *vt.* 表明; 表示
*informal /ɪn'fɔ:məl/ *adj.* 非正式的
injure /'ɪndʒə/ *vt.* 伤害
innocent /ɪ'nɒsənt/ *adj.* 天真无邪的, 单纯的; 无罪的
interrupt /ɪntə'rʌpt/ *vt. & vi.* 打断(讲话或动作), 打扰

J

jeep /dʒi:p/ *n.* 吉普车
journalist /'dʒɜ:nəlɪst/ *n.* 新闻工作者, 记者

K

kangaroo /kæŋgə'ru:/ *n.* 袋鼠
kettle /'ketəl/ *n.* 水壶

L

*laptop /'læptɒp/ *n.* 笔记本电脑
*Latin /'lætɪn/ *n.* 拉丁语; 拉丁系语言
laughter /'lɑ:ftə/ *n.* 笑, 笑声
leather /'leðə/ *n.* 皮革
legal /'li:gəl/ *adj.* 合法的, 与法律有关的
lemon /'lemən/ *n.* 柠檬
lift /lɪft/ *n.* 搭车
literature /'lɪtərətʃə/ *n.* 文学
load /ləʊd/ *n.* 满满一车; 很多; 工作量

M

mailbox /'meɪlbɒks/ *n.* 信箱, 邮筒
majority /mə'dʒɔ:rɪti/ *n.* 大半, 大多数
manners /'mænəz/ *n.* 礼貌
media /'mi:diə/ *n.* 大众传播媒介, 传媒
minority /maɪ'nɔ:rɪti/ *n.* 少数, 少数民族
mobile phone 移动电话
modest /'mɒdɪst/ *adj.* 谦虚的, 适度的
mosquito /mə'ski:təʊ/ *n.* 蚊子
motherland /'mʌðələnd/ *n.* 祖国; 家乡
motivate /'məʊtɪveɪt/ *vt.* 使有动机, 促使激发
motivation /məʊtɪ'veɪʃən/ *n.* 动力, 诱因
movement /'mu:vmənt/ *n.* 动作; 活动
muddy /'mʌdi/ *adj.* 泥泞的, 沾满泥的
*multi-cultural /mʌltɪ'kʌltʃərəl/ *adj.* 多种文化的
mushroom /'mʌʃru:m/ *n.* 蘑菇

N

nation /neɪʃən/ *n.* 国家; 民族
native /'neɪtɪv/ *adj.* 出生地的, 本土的
necklace /'neklɪs/ *n.* 项链, 项圈
nephew /'nevju:/ *n.* 侄子, 外甥
niece /ni:s/ *n.* 侄女, 外甥女
northeast /nɔ:θ'i:st/ *n.* 东北, 东北方
novel /'nɒvəl/ *n.* (长篇)小说

O

obsess /əb'ses/ *vt.* 使着迷
onto /'ɒntə/ *prep.* 到(在)……上
opera /'ɒpərə/ *n.* 歌剧
out of work 失业
outdoors /aʊt'dɔ:z/ *adv.* 在户外, 在野外
outgoing /aʊt'gəʊɪŋ/ *adj.* 友好的, 乐于交友的
owe /əʊ/ *vt.* 欠(情、债等)

P

painful /'peɪnfəl/ *adj.* 令人痛苦的, 引起疼痛的
*paparazzi /pæpə'rætsɪ/ *n.* 对名人作猎奇报道的新闻记者
parcel /'pɑ:səl/ *n.* 邮包, 包裹
passerby /pɑ:sə'baɪ/ *n.* 途人, 过路人
percentage /pə'sentɪdʒ/ *n.* 百分比, 百分率
photographer /fə'tɒgrəfə/ *n.* 摄影师
physician /fɪ'zɪʃən/ *n.* 内科医生
pleased /pli:zd/ *adj.* 高兴的, 满意的
political /pə'lɪtɪkəl/ *adj.* 政治的
popcorn /'pɒpkɔ:n/ *n.* 爆玉米花
*poverty /'pɒvəti/ *n.* 贫穷, 穷困
practical /'præktɪkəl/ *adj.* 实用的; 实践的
pretend /prɪ'tend/ *vt.* 假装

preview /'pri:vju:/ *n.* 预告; 预展, 预演
process /'prəuses/ *n.* 过程
product /'prɒdʌkt/ *n.* 产品; 出品
profit /'prɒfɪt/ *n.* 利润, 收益
protection /prə'tekʃən/ *n.* 保护, 防卫
pub /pʌb/ *n.* 小酒馆, 酒吧
publish /'pʌblɪʃ/ *vt.* 出版, 发行
put off 推迟
puzzle /'pʌzəl/ *vt.* 使困惑
*puzzled /'pʌzəld/ *adj.* 困惑的

Q

quiz /kwɪz/ *n.* 问答比赛 (游戏)

R

reasonable /'ri:zənəbəl/ *adj.* 合理的, 正当的
reform /rɪ'fɔ:m/ *n.* 改革, 改良
refrigerator /rɪ'frɪdʒəreɪtə/ *n.* (电) 冰箱
remove /rɪ'mu:v/ *vt.* 移开, 挪走
replace /rɪ'pleɪs/ *vt.* 代替, 取代
request /rɪ'kwest/ *n.* 请求
*resolution /,rezə'lʊ:ʃən/ *n.* 决心要做的事
respect /rɪ'spekt/ *vt.* 尊敬, 尊重
roast /rəʊst/ *n.* 烤, 烘
Roman /'rəʊmən/ *n.* 古罗马人
rude /ru:d/ *adj.* 粗鲁的, 无礼的

S

salesgirl /'seɪlɪzɜ:l/ *n.* 女售货员
salesman /'seɪlzmən/ *n.* 男售货员, 男推销员
scarf /skɑ:f/ *n.* 围巾, 头巾, 披巾
scene /si:n/ *n.* 场面, 场景
schoolmate /'sku:lmeɪt/ *n.* 同学
scissors /'sɪzəz/ *n.* 剪刀
second-hand *adj.* 旧的, 用过的, 二手的
see ... off 给(某人)送行
self /self/ *n.* 自我, 自身
self-employed *adj.* 自己经营的
sew /səʊ/ *vt.* 缝, 缝制
sewing /'seʊɪŋ/ *n.* 缝纫; 缝制品
sex /seks/ *n.* 性, 性别
sheet /ʃi:t/ *n.* 床单, 被单
sightseeing /'saɪtsi:ɪŋ/ *n.* 观光, 游览
signal /'sɪgnəl/ *n.* 信号, 暗号
slice /slaɪs/ *n.* 薄片, 片
sneaker /'sni:kə/ *n.* 胶底运动鞋
software /'sɒftweə/ *n.* 电脑软件
soil /sɔɪl/ *n.* 泥土, 土壤
sole /səʊ/ *n.* 鞋底 (不包括鞋跟)
southwest /,saʊθ'west/ *adv.* 在西南方
splendid /'splendɪd/ *adj.* 极佳的, 非常好的; 壮观的

spoken /'spəʊkən/ *adj.* 口头的
spokesman /'spəʊksmən/ *n.* 发言人
spot /spɒt/ *n.* 地点; 点; 斑点
stand for 代表, 支持
stand out 突出, 显眼
stare /steə/ *vi.* 盯着看, 凝视
steak /steɪk/ *n.* 肉排, 鱼排
stove /stəʊv/ *n.* 炉子
strawberry /'strɔ:bəri/ *n.* 草莓
suitable /'sju:təbəl/ *adj.* 合适的
sync /sɪŋk/ *vt.* (使) 同时发生, (使) 同步

T

tasty /'teɪsti/ *adj.* 美味的
technique /tek'ni:k/ *n.* 技术, 技巧
textbook /'tekstbʊk/ *n.* 课本, 教科书
tip /tɪp/ *v.* 给小费 *n.* 小费
toast /təʊst/ *n.* 烤面包; 祝酒, 干杯
tobacco /tə'bækəʊ/ *n.* 烟草, 烟叶
toss /tɒs/ *vt.* 扔, 抛, 掷
translation /træns'leɪʃən/ *n.* 翻译
trolleybus /'trɒlɪbʌs/ *n.* 无轨电车
truly /'tru:li/ *adv.* 真正地; 准确地
twin /twɪn/ *adj.* 孪生之一的 *n.* 双胞胎之一
tyre /taɪə/ *n.* 轮胎

U

unemployment /,ʌnɪm'plɔɪmənt/ *n.* 失业(状态)
unfair /,ʌn'feə/ *adj.* 不公平的

V

valley /'væli/ *n.* 谷, 山谷
variety /və'reɪəti/ *n.* 多样化, 多样性
vase /vɑ:z/ *n.* 花瓶
vast /vɑ:st/ *adj.* 巨大的, 广阔的
vest /vest/ *n.* 内衣, 背心
visual /'vɪʒʊəl/ *adj.* 视觉的, 视力的
visually /'vɪʒʊəli/ *adv.* 外表上; 视觉地

W

waiter /'weɪtə/ *n.* (餐厅) 服务员
waitress /'weɪtrɪs/ *n.* (餐厅) 女服务员
wallet /'wɒlɪt/ *n.* 皮夹子, 钱包
wander /'wɒndə/ *vi.* 漫游, 闲逛
*well-off /,wel'ɒf/ *adj.* 富有的
whisper /'wɪspə/ *vi.* 低语, 耳语
widespread /'waɪdspred/ *adj.* 广泛的
willing /'wɪlɪŋ/ *adj.* 愿意的, 乐意的
wire /waɪə/ *n.* 金属丝, 金属线

Y

yummy /'jʌmi/ *adj.* 美味的

Tapescript

Unit 10 Money

Warm-up

- 1 Mm, well, I've got a good job. I work very hard and I earn a good salary. I'll be honest – I like spending money, especially on clothes. Why not? I've earned it, haven't I?
- 2 Well, I think people are obsessed with money – they think money brings you happiness. But you don't need money that much ... I think the most important thing is to try to help other people. I mean people who really need help. I am in two charities. We collect money for children in poor countries ...
- 3 I've been out of work for five years now. It's very difficult to get a job at my age, you know. And I've had a lot of personal problems. I don't like asking for money, but I have to. I think a lot of people don't know how easy it is to get into my situation.
- 4 Personally, I think it's important to give money to charity, especially to charities for children. I mean most of us have some extra money, don't we? I'm not very rich, but I try to give as much money as I can.

Lesson 2 The Right Price

Exercise 4

Presenter: Hello and welcome to "The Shopping Program-me".

Today we're going to talk about bargains. In the studio we have Helen Cooper, a journalist, and a very enthusiastic shopper.

Helen: Hello.

Presenter: Most people in Britain don't bargain for things, you know, argue about the price of something. We pay the full price in the shop. The only time we probably bargain is when we buy a house or maybe when we buy a car. But what about you, Helen? Which of these things here would you bargain for – the fax machine, the scarfs, the necklace, the old record?

Helen: Well, it depends where you are. You can't usually bargain in a supermarket, but sometimes you can bargain in shops and markets. For example, if you pay cash or buy a lot of things, you can often get a discount. But let's see. Well, I'd definitely bargain for a fax machine. Mm, jewellery, a necklace, yes, why not? Scarfs, yes, sure. You can get good offers if you bargain, especially for clothing. Old records. Yes, you can certainly bargain for these, but you need to know if the record is valuable!

Exercise 5

Presenter: So, how do you bargain, Helen?

Helen: Well, it's very important to be friendly. Friendly, but firm at the same time. It's also important to have confidence, to believe that you can get what you want, but don't be aggressive. It's important not to be aggressive.

Presenter: So what do you say?

Helen: Well, it's important to say some good things about the product, before talking about the bad things.

Presenter: And how do you reduce the price?

Helen: Well, the best thing is to say that you haven't got much money, which might be true and you don't need to be ashamed of that!

Presenter: What do you do if the person says no?

Helen: Er, I say it's a pity, very politely, and that I'll try somewhere else.

Presenter: Thank you very much, Helen. I'll try some of your ideas next time I'm shopping. And now ...

Exercise 6

Female: Morning. (*rising intonation*). Can I help you? (*polite rise*)

Helen: No thanks, I'm just looking. (*falling intonation*)

Helen: Excuse me? (*polite rise*) Er, how much is this scarf, please? (*rise*)

Female: It's twenty pounds. (*fall*)

Helen: Can I have a look at it, please? (*rise*)

Female: Sure. (*fall*)

Helen: Mm, they're quite pretty, and they're silk. But they aren't very good quality. Good quality silk, I mean. I'll give you ten pounds.

Female: I'm sorry. Those scarfs are worth at least twenty pounds each.

Helen: They're very nice, I agree. But they're not really worth more than twelve pounds. Come on, you're not selling much today. And anyway, I haven't got much more money on me.

Female: I'll take seventeen.

Helen: OK, one last offer. Fifteen pounds. That's fair.

Female: Sixteen pounds, cash. And that's it.

Helen: OK, I'll take two.

Unit 11 The Media

Warm-up

1

Quizmaster: Now, if you get this question right, you and Tony go through to the final. Listen carefully. What Italian word do we

use to describe photographers who follow famous people? Right, Janet, here's your chance to get into the final.

Contestant: Is it the paparazzi?

Quizmaster: Yes, that's absolutely right, the paparazzi! Congratulations, you've made it to ...

2

Newsreader: ... and the secretary of the United Nations is giving a news conference later today on the situation in the Middle East. Last night, two men and one woman were arrested by police after a bomb went off in the centre of ...

3

Presenter: So, Alan, what made you leave television and go into films?

Guest: Ah well, I guess I wanted to see what I could do. I was in the same series for three years, and, er, I just wanted to go to Hollywood, you know, that had always been my dream.

Presenter: And how did you meet Spielberg? Did he ...

4

Commentator: And there's only five minutes left in this exciting cup match, and it's still Liverpool one, Manchester United one. And Michael Owen pushes the ball out to the right ...

Lesson 2 The Paparazzi

Exercise 3

Presenter: Good evening and welcome to this week's 'Media Analysis'. Tonight, we're going to analyse the problem of the paparazzi. We have Dr Lindbrow in the studio.

Dr L: Good evening.

Presenter: Dr Lindbrow, you've done some studies on the paparazzi. Could you tell us how the problem arose?

Dr L: Well, a lot of people blame the media for encouragement of the paparazzi. Newspapers and magazines are willing to pay high prices for photographs of famous people taken by these self-employed photographers. Nowadays, selling photographs of famous people has become big business.

Presenter: Is it legal to take photographs of famous people without letting them know?

Dr L: According to the law in Britain, it is legal to take photographs of famous people if they are in public. But sometimes, the paparazzi go too far in their attempt to get the best photographs. They may climb onto roofs or tall trees. They may even rent a boat or a helicopter in order to get pictures of famous people.

Presenter: But I know there are people who defend the paparazzi. Their argument is that taking photographs of famous people is part of the news collecting and reporting process. Don't you think that the paparazzi should have the same rights as all journalists?

Dr L: Yes, I agree. But not all the methods the paparazzi use are legal, and because their photographs can make great profits, the paparazzi are often prepared to risk expensive legal costs. One very famous example is Princess Diana's unfortunate death in 1997. Since then, the law and the public opinion have been less in favour of the paparazzi and their job. In recent years, many famous people have also taken legal action against members of the paparazzi and they ...

Exercise 6

Katy: Hey, Jamie, have you heard about this?

James: What?

Katy: You know Janice Jones, the film star? Well, paparazzi are following her all the time. Isn't it terrible?

James: Personally, I think that's her problem. I mean, it seems to me that if you want to be famous, you have to accept everything the media does.

Katy: I completely disagree. Everyone's got a right to some privacy, don't you think?

James: That's true, but if you sell your story to the media, you can't complain much.

Katy: I'm afraid you're wrong. Nobody's got the right to follow people everywhere. I mean, there are paparazzi everywhere, outside her house. It's awful. Just because she's got married for the third time.

James: You may be right, but I think she likes all the attention – all the newspaper articles and TV programmes.

Katy: Well, in my opinion, this shows the media is getting worse and worse. I mean, look at all these awful American chat shows on TV. They're so bad.

James: I agree. You're right, there's a lot of rubbish on nowadays.

Katy: I think they should control what goes on TV. There's too much violence and sex, all those terrible 'action' films, and even advertisements.

James: I totally agree. It's not very nice. But people seem to want that kind of thing. Personally, I'm against too much control.

Katy: I'm afraid I can't agree with you. I'm in favour of some kind of control. I think it's necessary to protect children.

James: Mm, I don't agree. How can you stop ...

Exercise 8

- 1 Tonight we're going to analyse the problem of the paparazzi.
- 2 A lot of people blame the media for encouragement of the paparazzi.
- 3 It is legal to take photographs of famous people if they are in public.

4 But I know there are people who defend the paparazzi.

Communication Workshop

Speaking: Exercise 1

Phil: Hey, Liz. Have a look at this.

Liz: Mm?

Phil: It's a really sweet ad for Mother's Day.

Liz: Don't you see this is an ad for selling flowers?

Phil: Really? Oh, I see. Very smart. But I still like ...

Liz: (*interrupts*) I can't stand ads like that. Honestly, no child of that age is going to go and buy her mum flowers. I'm sure the person who...

Phil: (*interrupts politely*) Can I say something?

Liz: All right.

Phil: I think you're over-reacting although you have a point. Many ads try to create a picture of a perfect world or life but...

Liz: (*interrupts*) Of course they do! They think that we're all stupid and are going to believe that if we buy flowers from their shop then we'll have perfect relationships within our families!

Phil: (*interrupts politely*) Can I interrupt a moment? Companies have to sell their products. They do try to make their products attractive but it's up to us whether we'll buy their products or not. If you ...

Liz: (*interrupts*) Rubbish! That's not true. Just think of all the people who are encouraged to smoke more by ads made by tobacco companies!

Phil: Well, I have to disagree with you there. People can't blame ads for what they buy. It's their decision and ...

Liz: (*interrupts*) You're wrong. Somehow I'm against all ads because they use false promises to get people to buy things.

Phil: (*interrupts politely*) I'd just like to show you this advertisement, Liz. It's for environmental protection. Surely you agree that ...

Liz: (*interrupts*) No way! All ads are trying to get your money somehow!

Unit 12 Culture Shock

Warm-up

1 Our typical way of life? Well, we're a beach culture, you know. We spend a lot of time at the beach, surfing, swimming, eating, partying – we even have our Christmas dinner on the beach, you know! It's the weather, you see, always lots of sunshine. And as for free time, we're just crazy about sport – cricket, rugby, tennis. I guess most of us spend our holidays on the coast in our country – it's very expensive to go abroad, you know. Everywhere's just so far away!

2 Well, it's a big, big country, so it's kind of hard to say what's typical. Like the weather – we've got all kinds of different climates. Our way of life, well, I guess it's fast, so the food is fast, too, lots of hamburgers and hot dogs. What else? Er, I guess we watch a lot of TV in our free time – there are hundreds of channels on 24 hours a day. Er, we go to the movies a lot, too. And sport is very big. Our basketball and football stars earn millions of dollars. Most of us go on holiday in our own country, it's so big and there are so many wonderful places to visit. You should come and visit us!

3 It's difficult to say what is typical, as we've become such a multicultural society. Our weather hasn't changed though and people still spend a lot of time talking about it! In terms of food, our traditional roast beef or fish and chips are not as popular as they used to be. People eat a lot more "international" food these days: Italian food, Indian food, that kind of thing. Free time? If you go to a park any weekend, you'll see lots of people jogging, walking or fishing. There are a lot of fitness fanatics! We like watching sport too, especially football, though our national teams always seem to lose! A lot of us go abroad for our holidays every year. Greece and Italy are the most popular destination, probably because the weather's so nice. There we are. I've mentioned the weather again!

Lesson 2 Mind Your Manners

Exercise 2

Presenter: Good morning and welcome to "Culture Matters". Today we're looking at different styles of communication in different cultures. We have Dr Jan Groot, from Utrecht University in Holland in the studio.

Expert: Good morning.

Presenter: Can you tell us what the main differences are in the way people around the world communicate?

Expert: Well, one of the main differences is between cultures that express how they feel – let's call them "open" cultures – and others which generally try not to show their feelings – let's call them "closed" cultures. People from "open" cultures generally show how they feel quite openly – when they are happy, or when they are angry. "Closed" cultures avoid showing their feelings, especially in more serious situations, such as at school, university or work. People from "closed" cultures are usually quieter and seem shyer and more modest than people from "open" cultures.

Presenter: Which cultures, then, are "open" and which are "closed"?

Expert: Mm, people from Latin cultures usually show their feelings more – for example, the Italians. When asked if they would

show that they were angry at work, 71% of Italians indicated that they would show this openly.

Presenter: And what about “closed” cultures?

Expert: Eastern cultures and northern European cultures do not show their feelings as much. For example, only 17% of the Japanese would show anger openly at work. And only 29% of the British would show they were angry.

Presenter: I see.

Expert: Curiously enough, the Americans are more like the Italians – over 60% would express anger openly in a work situation. Culturally, Americans are in between “open” and “closed” cultures – in some ways they are more “open” and in other ways they are more “closed”.

Exercise 3

Presenter: What differences are there in the way people actually express themselves – using hand movements and that sort of thing?

Expert: Well, people from “open” cultures, like the Italians, tend to use a lot more hand movements, you know, using not only their hands but their arms. People in more “closed” cultures, like the Japanese, Northern Europeans and even Americans, don’t use hand movements nearly as much.

Presenter: Mm, yes.

Expert: Also, people from “open” cultures usually look more directly at the person they are speaking to. The British and Americans often look at people to start with and then they look away. People from Eastern cultures like Japan, never look directly at the other person. To look at someone very directly is extremely rude.

Presenter: And what about speaking?

Expert: Right, well people from “open” cultures are more likely to interrupt or speak at the same time as the other person. In “closed” cultures, one person starts speaking only when the other has stopped. In a place like Japan, people never interrupt each other. They also wait for a while before speaking, so there is more silence.

Presenter: Finally, what about manners? What differences are there?

Expert: Well, Japanese and British people might seem more polite than Americans and people from Latin cultures. British people usually use “please”, “thank you” and “I’m sorry” more often. In Britain, it is very important to say “please” and “thank you”, even for the smallest things. If you don’t, it sounds very rude. In other cultures, like Latin cultures, to say “please” and “thank you” all the time sounds a bit false.

Presenter: I see. Well, thank you very much Dr Groot. That was

fascinating. I’m afraid we’ll have to stop there. Tomorrow we’ll be ...

Exercise 5

1

Christina: (*coughs*) Could you pass the salt?

Man: I’m sorry?

Christina: I said, could you pass the salt?

Man: (*offended*) Yes, there you are.

2

Boy: So, what do you think we should do this weekend? What about going canoeing again?

Girl: Yeah, last time we went it was great! We could maybe ...

Christina: (*interrupts*) No, I didn’t enjoy it last time. It was awful.

Girl: (*a bit peeved*) Well, all right, maybe not.

3

Christina: Er, Mrs Davis?

Mrs Davis: Yes, dear.

Christina: Could you give me a lift to school? I’m ready now, are you?

Mrs Davis: (*a bit put out*) Er, well, in about ten minutes, OK?

Christina: Yes, good.

4

Boy: Hi, Christina. Have you got that CD you borrowed?

Christina: What CD? Oh, that one. No, I haven’t.

Boy: Well, could you bring it tomorrow.

Christina: Yes, if I remember.

Communication Workshop

Speaking: Exercise 1

1

Boy: Hey, have you got the time?

Girl: Yeah, sure. Nearly half-past two.

Boy: Thanks.

2

Woman: Excuse me, could you tell me the right time, please?

Man: Yes, it’s nearly half-past two.

Woman: Thank you.

Man: You’re welcome.

3

Girl: Would you mind opening the window, please?

Man: Not at all.

Girl: Thank you very much.

4

Girl: Open the window, will you?

Boy: OK.

Girl: That’s better.

Exercise 2

Woman: Did you have a nice day?

Student: Yes, thank you. We played tennis after class. Could you pass the salt, please?

Woman: Yes, there you are.

Student: Er, can you collect me from class tomorrow? I'll be outside the school at half-past one.

Woman: Oh, er, well, I suppose so ...

Student: Oh, I nearly forgot. I'm very sorry, Mrs Weller, but this morning I broke a glass in the bathroom. I put it in the bin. Really, I'm sorry.

Woman: That's OK, it can't be helped.

Student: I'm going out on Saturday night with a friend I met yesterday. I'll be back late. But you can give me a key.

Woman: Well, I suppose if it's not very late ... Where are you going?

京权图字：01-2004-4733

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording or by any information storage retrieval system, without permission from Pearson Education, Inc.

English Reprint Published by Pearson Education Asia Limited and Beijing Normal University Press, Copyright ©2004

绿色印刷 保护环境 爱护健康

亲爱的同学们：

你们手中的这本教科书采用绿色印刷标准印制，在它的封底印有“绿色印刷产品”标志。从2013年秋季学期起，北京地区出版并使用的义务教育阶段中小学教科书全部采用绿色印刷。

按照国家环境标准（HJ2503-2011）《环境标志产品技术要求 印刷 第一部分：平版印刷》，绿色印刷选用环保型纸张、油墨、胶水等原辅材料，生产过程注重节能减排，印刷产品符合人体健康要求。

让我们携起手来，支持绿色印刷，选择绿色印刷产品，共同关爱环境，一起健康成长！

北京市绿色印刷工程

出版发行：北京师范大学出版社 www.bnupg.com

北京新街口外大街 19 号

邮政编码：100875

印 刷：北京京师印务有限公司

经 销：全国新华书店

开 本：890mm×1240mm 1/16

印 张：7.75

字 数：222 千字

版 次：2009 年 3 月第 3 版

印 次：2019 年 7 月第 21 次印刷

定 价：8.50 元

ISBN 978-7-303-07348-1

责任编辑：李珍珠

装帧设计：王 蕊

责任校对：段立超 陈 民

责任印制：孙文凯 窦春香

版权所有 侵权必究

反盗版、侵权举报电话：010-58800697

北京读者服务部电话：010-58808104

外埠邮购电话：010-58808083

如发现印装质量问题，影响阅读，请与印制管理部联系调换

印制管理部电话：010-58800825 010-58808061

